1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Roman Numerals in Function of "-лугаар²"

a	We live in the **20th** century.	Бид XX зуунд амьдарч байна.	[illegible] XX [illegible]
b	Where is district **number 14**?	XIV хороолол хаана байдаг вэ?	XIV [illegible]
c	Were you born in **May**?	Та V сард төрсөн үү?	[illegible] V [illegible]

1.1.3.3.4 Collective Numerals

The collective numerals (Latin 'colligere' = 'to collect') and their suffixes have no exact equivalents in English. They express something like 'the 4 of [us]', '[we] 6'. They appear often together with the **RS** (compare with p. 108).

1.1.3.3.4.1 Collective NuS "-уул²"

The numerals **2, 6, and 7** have a special written form(*). Where necessary, the Cyrillic suffix changes according to spelling rules ("ь" and "и" must be kept: "хорь" = "хориул") or it is added after the *inserted consonant* which follows long vowels (зуу = зуугуул).

the two **of** [us], **both**	хоёул(аа) *	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ) *
the three **of** [us], **all** three	гурвуул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
the four **of** [us], **all** four	дөрвүүл(ээ)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
the five **of** [us], **all** five	тавуул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
the six **of** [us], **all** six	зургуул(аа) *	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ) *
the seven **of** [us], **all** seven	долуул(аа) *	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ) *
the eight **of** [us], **all** eight	наймуул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
the nine **of** [us], **all** nine	есүүл(ээ)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
the ten **of** [us], **all** ten	арвуул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
all twenty **of** [us] together	хориул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)
all hundred **of** [us] together	зуугуул(аа)	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ)

1.1.3.3.4.2 Usage of Collective Numerals

Explanations:

1.) If the numeral is used **without an *RS***, the main interest is aimed at the **number**. If the ***RS* is added**, the main focus is on the fact whether all of them have come.

The six of them came. (not the five or the four)	Тэд нар зургуул ирсэн.	[illegible]
All six of them came. (None stayed behind)	Тэд нар зургуулаа ирсэн.	[illegible]

2.) In **colloquial language**, the numeral can be **repeated** and thereby often expresses a **surprise** (pleasant or unpleasant). In this case, the *RS* is always added (see **ex. i**). **Ex. f** and **h** are not repetitions in this sense because the "гурав" and the "ес" are part of the subject (та гурав/ та нар ес).

Examples:

a	There are **5 of us** living in our home.	Бид гэртээ тавуул(аа) байдаг.	[illegible] (ᠳᠤᠷ) [illegible]

b	They went there, **the four of them**.	Тэд тийшээ дөрвүүл(ээ) явсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ([illegible])
c	Let's do this, **both of us**!	Хоёулаа үүнийг хийчихье.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ··
d	Have **all ten** (of them) come?	Тэд арвуулаа ирчихсэн үү?	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
e	**How many of you** are you at home?	Та нар хэдүүл(ээ) суудаг вэ?	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] (ᠪᠤᠨ) [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
f	**All three of you** clean **together** please!	Та гурав гурвуулаа цэвэрлээрэй.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ··
g	Dorj, Baatar, and I, **all three of us**, have paid money.	Дорж, Баатар бид гурвуулаа мөнгө төлсөн.	[illegible] [illegible] · [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
h	You nine **all** got an 'unsatisfactory'.	Та нар ес есүүлээ муу авчаа.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ··
i	Oh, then, **you both, the two of you** have come?	Та хоёр хоёул хоёулаа ирсэн юм уу?	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

1.1.3.3.4.3 Declension of Collective Numerals

This suffix has an **n-stem** which is used for **declension**: хоёул(ан), гурвуул(ан), etc. The "г" only appears in Cyrillic with certain cases as an **inserted consonant.**

1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Overview of Declined Collective Numerals

Nom.	хоёул	гурвуул	дөрвүүл	арвуул
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
Gen.	хоёулангийн	гурвуулангийн	дөрвүүлэнгийн	арвуулангийн
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Dat.	хоёуланд	гурвуулаанд	дөрвүүлэнд	арвуулаанд
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Acc.	хоёуланг	гурвуулаанг	дөрвүүлэнг	арвуулаанг
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Abl.	хоёулангаас	гурвуулангаас	дөрвүүлэнгээс	арвуулангаас
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Instr.	хоёулангаар	гурвуулангаар	дөрвүүлэнгээр	арвуулангаар
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Com.	хоёулантай	гурвуулантай	дөрвүүлэнтэй	арвуулантай
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Dir.	хоёулан руу	гурвуулан руу	дөрвүүлэн руу	арвуулан руу
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]

1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Usage of Declined Collective Numerals

Explanations:
The CS is **always** added to the collective numeral, and usually also to the object to which the numeral refers (exception is **ex. G**, where the object is a pronoun that doesn't need the CS). The numbers in parentheses may appear but without any extra meaning.

N	Father and mother, **both of them**, will come from the countryside.	Аав ээж (хоёр) хоёулаа хөдөөнөөс ирнэ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
G	The books of **all four of us** are in this chest of drawers.	Бид дөрвүүлэнгийн маань ном энэ шүүгээнд байдаг юм.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
D	The father bought for his five children, for **all five of them**, new boots.	Эцэг нь таван хүүхэдтэй тавуулантаа нь шинэ гутал авчээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
A	The teacher calls **you two, both of you**.	Та хоёрыг хоёулантаа чинь багш дуудаж байна.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
A	The teacher asked us, **all six of us**. ("The teacher asked of us, of **all six** ..")	Багш бид (зургаагаас) зургуулантаа маань асуулт асуув.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
I	On his way, he entered **four** yurts, **all of them**.	Тэр дөрвөн гэрээр дөрвүүлэнгээр нь орлоо.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
C	I am a good acquaintance of those **four** people, **of all of them**. ("..acquaintance with...")	Би тэр дөрвөн хүнтэй дөрвүүлэнтээ нь сайн танил.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
D	He shot simultaneously at **all three**.	Тэр гурвуулан руу зэрэг буудсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

1.1.3.3.5 Approximate Numerals

Approximate numerals are expressed in English with words like: **at most, approximate, about, less than, more than, at least, etc**. In Mongolian, suffixes and postpositions are used. The suffixes should only be used for **round figures** like 50, 70, 200, 400, and 500.

1.1.3.3.5.1 Overview of Approximate Numerals

The NuS "–аад[4]" determines the **upper limit**, that means, for example, "арваад" should be translated as '**at most ten**'. But not always the translation 'at most' is the best one.
Please note the special **Cyrillic written forms** that have to do with correct spelling rules:
• "ь" and "и" may not be dropped: "хорь" = "хориод", "тавь" = "тавиад"
• long vowels need the inserted consonant "г": "зуу" = "зуугаад"
• "я" already contains an "а": "ная" = "наяад"

at most 10	арваад	[illegible]	at most 70	далаад	[illegible]
at most 20	хориод	[illegible]	at most 80	наяад	[illegible]
at most 30	гучаад	[illegible]	at most 90	ерэлд	[illegible]
at most 40	дочоод	[illegible]	at most 100	зуугаад	[illegible]
at most 50	тавиад	[illegible]	at most 200	хоёр зуугаад	[illegible]
at most 60	жараад	[illegible]	at most 1000	мянгаад	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.5.2 Usage of Approximate Numerals

1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Approximate NuS "-аад[4]"

Meaning 'at most', 'about', 'not more than'

a	**About 10** children are playing there.	Тэнд арваад хүүхэд тоглож байна.	[illegible]
b	This school has **not more than 60** teachers.	Энэ сургууль жараад багштай.	[illegible]
c	In our classroom there are, **at most**, **40** chairs.	Манай анги дөчөөд сандалтай.	[illegible]
d	In the shop **about 80** meters of material are left.	Дэлгүүрт наяад метр даавуу үлджээ.	[illegible]
e	**At best**, **100** people might come today.	Өнөөдөр зуугаад хүн ирэх байх.	[illegible]
g	Father will come in **about 20** days.	Аав хориод хоноод ирнэ.	[illegible]
h	Oh, **about 30** cars are gathered outside.	Хөөх, гадаа гучаад машин цугларчээ.	[illegible]

Meaning '— ies' (talking of years)

a	In Mongolia in the **fifties,** collectivism won.	Монголд 1950-иад онд нэгдэлжих хөдөлгөөн ялсан.	[illegible]
b	Nowadays, life in Mongolia has become very different from that in the **eighties**.	Одоо Монголын амьдрал наяад оны-хоос их өөр болжээ.	[illegible]
c	In the **nineties,** many heavy problems arise in the world.	Ерээд онд дэлхий дээр олон чухал асуудал гарч байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 Postpositions "гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим"

Numerals with the following **postpositions** can be used as approximate numerals:

a	гаруй	[illegible]	more than ...	only for tens
b	илүү	[illegible]	more than...	only for tens
c	шахам	[illegible]	almost ...	only for tens
d	орчим	[illegible]	approximate	the number being used is in the middle

a	People discovered this monument after **more than 1000** years.	Энэ дурсгалыг хүмүүс мянга гаруй жилийн дараа олсон.	[illegible]
a	I have **more than 100** camels.	Би зуу гаруй тэмээтэй.	[illegible]
b	This year we harvested **more than 500** hectares.	Бид энэ жил таван зуу илүү га-гаас ургац авсан.	[illegible]
b	**More than 40** people fit in this hall.	Энэ танхимд 40 илүү хүн багтана.	[illegible]

c	He owns **almost a hundred** sheep.	Тэр зуу шахам хоньтой.	[illegible]
c	Baatar is **almost 50** years old.	Баатар тавь шахам настай.	[illegible]
d	She is **about 20** years old.	Тэр хорь орчим настай.	[illegible]
d	Their group has **about 70** members.	Тэдний баг дал орчим гишүүнтэй.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Repetition

a	хоер гурав дөрөв тав	[illegible] [illegible]	two three four five	always used with successive numbers
b	зуу зуун... мянга мянган... түм буман ...	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]	hundreds of ... thousands of ... very many...	Only with "түм бум" two different numbers ("10,000/ 100,000") are used.

a	Will you come **in three, four** minutes?	Та гурав дөрвөн минутын дараа ирэх үү?	[illegible]
a	There were only **five, six** eggs.	Зөвхөн тав зургаан өндөг байсан.	[illegible]
a	Yesterday **four to five hundred** people came.	Өчигдөр дөрөв таван зуун хүн ирэв	[illegible]
a	It rained around **two, three** o'clock.	Хоёр гурван цагийн үеэр бороо орсон.	[illegible]
b	He has **hundreds of** dollars.	Түүнд зуу зуун доллар бий.	[illegible]
b	**Thousands of** families are spending their summer here.	Энд мянга мянган айл өрх зусаж байна.	[illegible]
b	In the streets, **very many** people behave madly. ("...**10,000, 100,000** living beings are being bewildered.")	Гудамжинд түм буман амьтан бужигнаж байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.5.3 Declension of Approximate Numerals

The declension of the approximate numerals is done according to general rules.

Examples:

N	**At most, ten** of the students who came yesterday are working here.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь энд ажил хийж байна.	[illegible]
G	The work of **about ten** of the students who came yesterday is coming to an end.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадын нь ажил дуусах шахжээ.	[illegible]

D	To **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday, someone alloted work again.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь дахин ажил хуваарь өглөө.	[illegible]
A	The boss of the cooperative called **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь нэгдлийн дарга дуудсан.	[illegible]
A	**About 10** of the students who had come yesterday were asked about this. ("From about ten...")	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь энэ тухай асуусан.	[illegible]
I	Potatoes and cabbage will be harvested by, **at most, ten** of the students who came yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь төмс, байцаа хураалгана.	[illegible]
C	We worked together today with, **at most, ten** of the students who had come yesterday .	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь бид өнөөдөр хамт ажил хийсэн.	[illegible]
D	We sent money to **not more than ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь бид мөнгө явуулсан.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.6 Multiplying Numerals

With such numerals 'times' is expressed. Again, there are two ways in Mongolian to say this:
- with **suffixes**, which is only done in **written language**
- with the **words** for 'times' (удаа) or 'again' (дахин), which are widely used in **colloquial language**.

1.1.3.3.6.1 Overview of Multiplying Numerals

This suffix is added to the **n-stem**. It's usually used for **small numbers**.

2x, twice	хоёронтоо	[illegible]	5x, five times	тавантаа	[illegible]
3x, three times	гурвантаа	[illegible]	6x, six times	зургаантаа	[illegible]
4x, four times	дөрвөнтөө	[illegible]	7x, seven times	долоонтоо	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.6.2 Usage of Multiplying Numerals

1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Multiplying NuS "-таа"

a	Although he shot **three times**, he didn't hit the target.	Тэр гурвантаа буудсан болов ч оносонгүй.	[illegible]
b	He often comes here. ("**many times**")	Тэр энд олонтоо ирдэг.	[illegible]
c	He nodded **twice** and then went out.	Тэр хоёронтоо толгой дохиод гарч одов.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.6.2.2 Words "дахин, удаа"

"удаа" needs the **n-stem,** "дахин" does **not.** Generally, these two words can be used interchangeably. The exception is **ex. c**, where a repeated action is logically impossible. To see the difference more clearly, study examples **d and e**. In mathematics, "дахин" is used.

a	I came **twice** to your home.	Би танайд хоёр дахин (удаа) ирсэн.	[illegible] ·· [illegible] (удаа)
b	My son has had three colds this winter. ("**three times** a cold")	Миний хүү энэ өвөл гурав дахин (гурван удаа) ханиад авсан.	(ханиад) [illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	Please take this medicine **three times** a day.	Та энэ эмийг өдөрт гурван удаа уугаарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
d	He failed **three times in a row** in the exam.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурав дахин унасан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
e	He failed the examinations **three times**.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурван удаа унасан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

1.1.3.3.7 Diminutive Numerals

This suffix bears the meaning '**only**'. As a matter of fact, it's a derivational suffix for adjectives and serves the numerals in this function.

1.1.3.3.7.1 Diminutive NuS "–хан"

It is always used **without the n-stem**, possible for **all numerals**.

only one	ганцхан (нэгхэн)	[illegible] (нэгхэн)	**only** six	зургаахан	[illegible]
only two	хоёрхон	[illegible]	**only** seven	долоохон	[illegible]
only three	гуравхан	[illegible]	**only** eight	наймхан	[illegible]
only four	дөрөвхөн	[illegible]	**only** nine	есхөн	[illegible]
only five	тавхан	[illegible]	**only** ten	аравхан	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.7.2 Usage of Diminutive Numerals

a	I have **only two** older brothers.	Би хоёрхон ахтай.	[illegible] ··
b	Today he **only** worked **five** hours.	Тэр өнөөдөр тавхан цаг ажиллав.	[illegible] ··
c	**Only ten** people came into the hall.	Танхимд аравхан хүн иржээ.	[illegible] ··
d	Bold had **only one** point less than Baatar.	Болд ганцхан (нэгхэн) оноогоор Баатараас дутав.	[illegible] [illegible] (нэгхэн) [illegible]
e	My son, I* will come back after **only 2** hours. (* the mother)	Миний хүү, эзэж нь хоёрхон цагийн дараа ирнэ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
f	Sir, please give me **only four**.	Ах аа, та надад дөрөвхнийг өгөөч дээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

1.1.3.3.8 Distributive Numerals

The English '**4 each**', '**8 each**', **etc.** is expressed in Mongolian with a **repeated number**. Such distributive numerals give either an ***accusative*** or an ***instrumental object***. If the noun is dropped, they can be **declined**.

1.1.3.3.8.1 Usage of Distributive Numerals

Examples "a" always show the **attributive usage**, i.e., they describe a *noun*. If this noun is dropped, the numeral has a noun function and is declined (**ex. b**). If the noun is mentioned before the numeral, the numeral has to be declined (**ex. b***).

1a	The students were given prizes of **a thousand** *tögrögs* **each.**	Оюутнуудыг мянга мянган төгрөгөөр шагнажээ.	[illegible]
1b	The students were given prizes of **a thousand each**.	Оюутнуудыг мянга мянгаар шагнажээ.	[illegible]
2a	The soldiers stood in *blocks* **of twenty** *rows*.	Цэргүүд хорь хорин эгнээгээр жагсжээ.	[illegible]
2b	The soldiers stood in rows **of twenty**.	Цэргүүд хорь хоркор эгнэн жагсжээ.	[illegible]
3a	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks*.	Багш сурагчиддаа тав таван нимгэн дэвтэр өглөө.	[illegible]
3b *	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks*.	Багш сурагчиддаа нимгэн дэвтэр тав тавыг өглөө.	[illegible]
3b	The teacher gave his pupils **five each.**	Багш сурагчиддаа тав тавыг өглөө.	[illegible]
4a	Please take **two** *notebooks* **each**.	Та нар хоёр хоёр дэвтэр аваарай.	[illegible]
4b *	Please take from these *notebooks* **two each.**	Та нар энэ дэвтрээс хоёр хоёрыг аваарай.	[illegible]
4b	Please take **two each**.	Та нар хоёр хоёрыг аваарай.	[illegible]
5	Stack these books up on that shelf **ten per** pile.	Наад номоо тэр тавиур дээр арав арваар нь давхарлан хураа!	[illegible]
6	(Someone) bundled the many one-tögrög bills together **by the hundreds.**	Олон нэгтийн төгрөгийг зуу зуугаар нь боолоо.	[illegible]
7	Enter there **one by one**!	Та нар тийшээ нэг нэгээр орцгоо.	[illegible]
8	The people made groups **of three each**.	Хүмүүс тэнд гурав гурваараа баг болжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9 Numerals in Mathematics

These are the most commonly used terms in mathematics:

+	нэмэх тэмдэг	[illegible]	plus sign
-	хасах тэмдэг	[illegible]	minus sign
·	үржүүлэх тэмдэг	[illegible]	multiplication sign
:	хуваах тэмдэг	[illegible]	division sign
=	тэнцүүгийн тэмдэг	[illegible]	equal sign

1.1.3.3.9.1 Decimals

"ноль" is a Russian loan word and, until now, has been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for zero "тэг" has been reintroduced. A literal translation of **ex. g** would be: 'six (six whole), three hundred and thirty-three of thousand'.

a	0.5 (zero point five)	тэг аравны тав (0,5)	[illegible]
b	0.6 (zero point six)	тэг аравны зургаа (0,6)	[illegible]
c	0.3 (zero point three)	тэг аравны гурав (0,3)	[illegible]
d	0.25 (zero point two five)	тэг зууны хорин тав (0,25)	[illegible]
e	10.5 (ten point five)	арав (арван бүхэл) аравны тав (10,5)	[illegible]
f	1.75 (one point seven five)	нэг (бүхэл) зууны далан тав (1,75)	[illegible]
g	6.334 (six point three three four)	зургаа(зургаан бүхэл) мянганы гурван зуун гучин дөрөв (6,334)	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.2 Fractions

In Mongolian, you have to start with the **denominator**, which is in genitive case.

a	1/2 (one half)	хоёрны нэг	[illegible]
b	1/3 (one third)	гуравны нэг	[illegible]
c	1/5 (one fifth)	тавны нэг	[illegible]
d	3/8 (three eighths)	наймны гурав	[illegible]
e	7/9 (seven nineths)	есний долоо	[illegible]
f	2 5/6 (two and five sixths)	хоёр бүхэл зургааны тав	[illegible]
g	5 1/2 (five and a half)	таван бүхэл хоёрны нэг	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.3 Percentages

"процент" is a Russian loan word which, until now, has also been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for percent "хувь" (share) has been reintroduced.
Because a noun follows (хувь), the number is used **attributively**, i.e., with its **n-stem**.

a	20% (twenty percent)	хорин хувь	[illegible]
b	45% (forty-five percent)	дөчин таван хувь	[illegible]
c	19.2% (19 point two percent)	арван ес, аравны хоёр хувь (19,2%)	[illegible]
d	99.8% (ninety-nine point eight percent)	ерөн ес, аравны найман хувь (99,8%)	[illegible]
e	103.85% (one hundred three point eight five percent)	зуун гурав, зууны наян таван хувь (103,85%)	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.4 Numerals in Basic Arithmetic Functions

1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Addition

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг нэмэхэд тав болно/ болдог.
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг нэмбэл тав болно/ болдог.

Examples:

a	2+3=5 (two **plus** three equals five)	хоёр дээр нэмэх нь гурав тэнцүү тав	[illegible]
b	10+8=18 (ten **plus** eight equals eighteen)	арав дээр нэмэх нь найм тэнцүү арван найм	[illegible]
c	24+6=30 (twenty-four **plus** six equals thirty)	хорин дөрөв дээр нэмэх нь зургаа тэнцүү гуч	[illegible]
d	2+?=9 (two **plus** how many equals nine?)	хоер дээр хэдийг нэмбэл ес вэ?	[illegible]
e	?+5=20 (how many **plus** five equals twenty?)	хэд дээр тавыг нэмбэл хорь вэ?	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Subtraction

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Арваас наймыг хасахад хоёр үлдэнэ/ болно.
- Арваас наймыг хасвал хоёр үлдэнэ/ болно.

Examples:

a	10-8=2 (ten **minus** eight equals two)	арваас хасах нь найм тэнцүү хоёр	[illegible]
b	13-7=6 (thirteen **minus** seven equals six)	арван гурваас хасах нь долоо тэнцүү зургаа	[illegible]

c	130-71=59 (hundred and thirty **minus** seventy-one equals fifty-nine)	зуун гучаас хасах нь да-лан нэг тэнцүү тавин ес	[illegible]
d	7-?=4 (seven **minus** how many equals four?)	долоогоос хэдийг хасвал дөрөв бэ?	[illegible]
e	?-30=18 (how many **minus** thirty equals eighteen?)	Хэдээс гучийг хасвал арван найм бэ?	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Multiplication

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
• Гурвыг таваар үржүүлэхэд арван тав болно.
• Гурвыг таваар үржүүлвэл арван тав болно.

Examples:

a	3·5=15 (three **times** five equals fifteen)	гурвыг үржих нь тав тэнцүү арван тав	[illegible]
b	8·4=32 (eight **times** four equals thirty-two)	наймыг үржих нь дөрөв тэнцүү гучин хоёр	[illegible]
c	9·7=63 (nine **times** seven equals sixty-three)	есийг үржих нь долоо тэнцүү жаран гурав	[illegible]
d	2·?=16 (two **times** how many equals sixteen?)	хоёрыг хэдээр үржүүлвэл арван зургаа вэ?	[illegible]
e	?·4= 36 (how many **times** four equals thirty-six?)	хэдийг дөрвөөр үржүүл-вэл гучин зургаа вэ?	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Division

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
• Арвыг хоёрт хуваахад тав болно.
• Арвыг хоёрт хуваабал тав болно.

Examples:

a	10:2=5 (ten **divided by** two equals five)	арвыг хуваах нь хоёр тэнцүү тав	[illegible]
b	40:5=8 (forty **divided by** five equals eight)	дөчийг хуваах нь тав тэнцүү найм	[illegible]
c	20:5=4 (twenty **divided by** five equals four)	хорийг хуваах нь тав тэнцүү дөрөв	[illegible]
d	56:?=7 (fifty-six **divided by** how many equals seven?)	тавин зургааг хэдэд хуваахад долоо вэ?	[illegible]
e	?:8=6 (how many **divided by** eight equals six?)	хэдийг наймд хуваахад зургаа вэ?	[illegible]

1.2 Representative Parts of Speech (Prowords)

We have given **a new name** to those parts of speech that can represent others: **prowords**. The traditional name 'pronouns' (Latin 'pro nomen' = 'for noun') doesn't fully serve our purpose because **Mongolian prowords not only represent nouns**, but also adjectives, adverbs, numerals, and even verbs.

1.2.1 Systematic Classification

In the following chart we will try to show which Mongolian prowords represent which parts of speech. In the semantic classification, we will give examples and translations.

1.2.1.1 PROWORDS FOR NOUNS

Explanation	Personal	Possessive	Reflexive	Demonstr.	Interrog.	Indefinite
for people	би	минийх	өөрөө (singular)	эд нар тэд нар өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	хэн	хэн ч хэн нэгэн хэн хэнгүй хэн ч ..-гүй
	чи/та	чинийх таных				
	тэр	түүнийх				
	бид (нар)	биднийх манайх	өөрсдөө (plural)			
	та нар	та нарынх танайх				
	тэд (нар)	тэднийх тэд нарынх				
for things, items				эдгээр тэдгээр өнөөтөх нөгөөтөх	юу	юу ч юу юугүй юу ч ..-гүй

1.2.1.2 PROWORDS FOR VERBS

- There are **no prowords** for verbs in the categories **'personal'**, **'possessive'**, and **'reflexive'**.
- **demonstrative:** ингэ-, тэгэ-
- **interrogative:** яа-, хэрхи-
- **indefinite:** яа- ч

1.2.1.3 PROWORDS FOR ADWORDS

- There are **no prowords** for adwords in the categories **'personal'** and **'possessive'**.
- **reflexive:** өөрийн(хөө), өөрсдийн(хөө)
- **demonstrative:** энэ, тэр, эдгээр, тэдгээр, ийм, тийм, иймэрхүү, тиймэрхүү, өнөө, нөгөө, өдий, тэдий, өчнөөн, тэчнээн,
- **interrogative:** ямар, аль, хэд(эн), хичнээн, хэзээ, хэдийд, хаа(на), хаашаа, хаанаас, хаагуур, хэр, яаж, яагаад
- **indefinite:** ямар ч, ямар нэг(эн), алин ч, аль нэг(эн), аль альгүй, хэд(эн) ч, хичнээн ч, хэзээ ч, хэзээ нэг, хэзээ нэгэнтээ, хэзээ хэзээгүй, хаана ч, хаа нэг, хаа нэгэнтээ, хаа хаагүй, хаашаа ч, хаанаас ч, хаагуур ч, яаж ч, яа- ч.

1.2.2 Semantic Classification

The semantic classification follows the traditional way to make subgroups:

1.2.2.1 PERSONAL PROWORDS

Personal prowords always **represent nouns**. Therefore, we could also use the traditional name 'personal pronouns'.

1.2.2.1.1 Overview of Personal Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
би (над–)	(ᠨᠠᠳ)	**I**	The stem in **parentheses** is always used for **declension** (i.e., to add suffixes). Note the **4 exceptions** to this (see **shadowed** squares under 1.2.2.1.2).
чи (чам–)	(ᠴᠠᠮ)	**you**	Generally used for **younger** people than oneself or **close friends** around the same age.
та (тан–)	(ᠲᠠᠨ)	**you** (honoray)	Originally plural form, then changed into **honorary singular** form. Usually used for people **older** than oneself.
тэр (түүн–)	(ᠲᠦᠦᠨ)	**he** **she** **it**	**There is no difference between he/she/it** because originally, there was no proword for the 3rd person. "тэр/энэ" are actually demonstrative prowords (this/that). For this reason, it's **not very polite** to use this personal proword. Where possible, other words should be used (see examples on page 259).
бид (бидэн–) (ман–) бид нар	(ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ) [**old:** ᠮᠠᠨᠤᠨᠳᠤ]	**we**	"бид нар" **stresses the plural meaning,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. "ман–" is the old plural stem that has lost its meaning. But with the youth, the usage of "ман–" has become popular. "Биднус" is a very informal colloquial version.
та нар	[**old:** ᠲᠠᠨᠤᠨᠳᠤ]	**you** (plural)	"та" was originally the personal proword for the **2nd person plural**. Today it's mainly used for a **honorary singular** address. Therefore, the common plural form today is "та нар".
тэд (тэдэн–) тэд нар	(ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨ) [**old:** ᠲᠡᠨᠤᠨᠳᠤ]	**they**	"тэд нар" **stresses the plural,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. An explanation for "эд нар" is found on page 264.

Explanations to the declension table on the next page:

1.) We suggest that students **memorize the** ***word stems*** (in the table above in parentheses) and the **4 exceptions** to it (shadowed squares in table on the next page):
- "миний" and "чиний" don't use the common stem.
- "намайг" has a different declension; in colloquial language people also use "надыг".
- "чамайг" has a different declension; but "чамыг" is wrong!
- «ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠶᠢᠭ᠄ᠴᠠᠮᠠᠶᠢᠭ᠄», the Classical script forms for "намайг/чамайг", are written as exceptions. «ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠶᠢᠭ᠄ᠴᠠᠮᠠᠶᠢᠭ᠄» are wrong forms.

2.) The English translation can vary if these prowords are used in a context, particularly the instrumental and ablative case prowords.

3.) The third person singular form in instrumental case has two acceptable forms: "түүнээр" and "түүгээр". Grammatically, the first form is correct, as it uses the stem "түүн".

4.) The directive CS "руу[2]/луу[2]" could also be added directly as in "надруу, та нарлуу".

5.) For an explanation of "манай/танай"[19] (1st/2nd person singular genitive) see page 104.

1.2.2.1.2 Declension of Personal Prowords

	Singular				Plural		
	I	you	you (hon.)	he/she/it	we	you	they
	би	чи	та	тэр	бид (нар)	та нар	тэд (нар)
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] (нар)	[illegible] нар	[illegible] (нар)
	my	your	your	his/her/its	our	your	their
	миний *манай	чиний *танай	тан[illegible]	түүний	биднийн бид нар[illegible] (манай*)	та нар[illegible]	тэдний тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible] * [illegible]	[illegible] * [illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ([illegible]*)	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
	(to) me	(to) you	(to) you	(to) him/her/it	(to) us	(to) you	(to) them
	надад	чамд	тан[illegible]	түүнд	биднэд бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэдэнд тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
	me	you	you	him/her/it	us	you	them
	намайг надыг	чамайг	тан[illegible]	түүнд[illegible]	биднийг бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэднийг тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
	from me	from you	from you	from him/her/it	from us	from you	from them
	над[illegible]	чам[illegible]	тан[illegible]	түүнд[illegible]	биднээс бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэднээс тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
	by me	by you	by you	by him/her/it	by us	by you	by them
	над[illegible]	чам[illegible]	тан[illegible]	түүнд[illegible] түүгээр[illegible]	биднээр бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэднээр тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
	with me	with you	with you	with him/her/it	with us	with you	with them
	над[illegible]	чам[illegible]	тан[illegible]	түүнд[illegible]	биднэтэй бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэдэнтэй тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
	toward me	toward you	toward you	toward him/her/it	toward us	toward you	toward them
	над[illegible]	чам[illegible]	тан[illegible]	түүнд[illegible]	биднэд[illegible] бид нар[illegible]	та нар[illegible]	тэдэнд[illegible] тэд нар[illegible]
	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] нар [illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

1.2.2.1.3 Usage of Personal Prowords

1.2.2.1.3.1 "би" = "I"

a	**I** am rejoicing.	Би баярлаж байна.	[illegible]
b	**My** father is a teacher. (**My*** wife returned to her job.)	Миний аав багш. (Манай* эхнэр ажилдаа орсон.)	[illegible]
c	Please give **me** this notebook.	Надад энэ дэвтрийг өгөөч!	[illegible]
d	Dorj saw **me**.	Дорж намайг харсан.	[illegible]
e	What did you ask me? ("What did you ask **from me**?")	Чи надаас юу асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
f	He had me help him. ("He was helped **by me**.")	Тэр надаар туслуулсан.	[illegible]
g	When will you meet me? ("...meet **with me**?")	Чи надтай хэзээ уулзах вэ?	[illegible]
h	Please call me. ("Please talk **toward me** through the wire.")	Та над руу утсаар яриарай.	[illegible]

* see explanation to the words "манай/ танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.2 "чи" = "you"

a	When will **you** go?	Чи хэзээ явах вэ?	[illegible]
b	Where is **your** book? (Is **your*** child well?)	Чиний ном хаа байна? (Танай * хүүхэд сайн уу?)	[illegible]
c	I will teach a lesson **to you**./ I will teach **you**.	Би чамд хичээл заана.	[illegible]
d	I know **you**.	Би чамайг танина.	[illegible]
e	I took a book **from you**.	Би чамаас ном авсан.	[illegible]
f	Did the mother send the letter with you? ("...**through you**?")	Ээж чамаар захиа явуулсан уу?	[illegible]
g	I study together **with you**.	Би чамтай хамт сурдаг.	[illegible]
h	I will come **to(ward) you**.	Би чам руу очно.	[illegible]

* see explanation to the words "манай/ танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.3 "та" = "you" (honorary)

a	Do **you** have time?	Та завтай юу?	[illegible]
b	What's **your** name? (Where does **your*** husband work?)	Таны нэр хэн бэ? (Танай* нөхөр хаана ажилладаг вэ?)	[illegible]
c	I will give **you** bread.	Би танд талх өгнө.	[illegible]
d	I waited for **you**.	Би таныг хүлээсэн.	[illegible]
e	I'd like to buy dollars **from you**.	Би танаас доллар авмаар байна.	[illegible]
f	I want to have a 'deel' made **by you**.	Би танаар дээл хийлгэмээр байна.	[illegible]

g	I will go together **with you**.	Би <u>тантай</u> хамт явна.	[illegible]
h	I will send this **to you** afterwards.	Би <u>үүнийг</u> дараа <u>тан руу</u> явуулна.	[illegible]

* see explanation to the words "манай/ танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.4 "тэр" = *"he/she/it"*

This personal proword is **not very polite** in its nominative form and should only be used if there is no better way to say it (see **ex. a** in parentheses). **Ex. f** gives the grammatically correct form "<u>түүнээр</u>", but "<u>түүгээр</u>" is widely used in colloquial language.

a	**He/She/It** left. (Baatar.../My older brother.../The person who came to your home...)	<u>Тэр</u> явсан. (Баатар/ Манай ах../ Танайд ирсэн хүн...)	[illegible]
b	Where is **his/her** father?	<u>Түүний</u> аав хаа байна?	[illegible]
c	Give **him/her/it** something to drink.	<u>Түүнд</u> нэг уух юм өг!	[illegible]
d	Will you see **him/her/it**?	Чи <u>түүнийг</u> харах уу?	[illegible]
e	Ask him/her. ("Ask **from him/her**.")	<u>Түүнээс</u> асуу!	[illegible]
f	I have him/her teach me English. ("I am being taught English **by him/her**.")	Би <u>түүнээр</u> англи хэл заалгадаг.	[illegible]
g	I talked **with him/her** on the phone.	Би <u>түүнтэй</u> утсаар ярьсан.	[illegible]
h	My teacher sent him/her a fax. ("...a fax **to him/her**.")	Манай багш <u>түүн руу</u> факс явуулсан.	[illegible]

1.2.2.1.3.5 "бид (нар)" = *"we"*

a	**We** shall arrive tomorrow.	<u>Бид (нар)</u> маргааш ирнэ.	[illegible]
b	**Our** beds are hard. (**Our** house has 4 rooms.)	<u>Бидний (Бид нарын)</u> ор хатуу байна. (Манай байр 4 өрөөтэй.)	[illegible]
c	Please give **us** something to eat.	<u>Бидэнд (Бид нарт)</u> нэг идэх юм өгөөрэй!	[illegible]
d	Who called **us**?	<u>Биднийг (Бид нарыг)</u> хэн дуудсан бэ?	[illegible]
e	He was bored with us. ("He was bored **from us**.")	Тэр <u>биднээс (бид нараас)</u> уйдсан.	[illegible]
f	He made us help him./He was helped **by us**.	Тэр <u>биднээр (бид нараар)</u> туслуулсан.	[illegible]
g	They (always) play together **with us**.	Тэд <u>бидэнтэй (бид нартай)</u> тоглодог.	[illegible]
h	The puppy ran **toward us**.	Гөлөг <u>бидэн рүү (бид нар луу)</u> гүйсэн.	[illegible]

1.2.2.1.3.6 "та нар" = "you" (plural)

a	What will **you** do tomorrow?	Та нар маргааш юу хийх вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Your** books are there.	Та нарын номууд тэнд байна.	[illegible]
c	I won't give **you** money.	Би та нарт мөнгө өгөхгүй.	[illegible]
d	I saw **you**.	Би та нарыг харсан.	[illegible]
e	She is embarrassed in your presence. ("She is embarrassed **from you**.")	Тэр та нараас ичдэг.	[illegible]
f	Does the teacher have **you** clean his classroom? (*causative* takes instr. CS)	Багш өрөөгөө та нараар цэвэрлүүлдэг үү?	[illegible]
g	The doctor will meet **you**. ("... meet **with you**")	Эмч та нартай уулзана.	[illegible]
h	I sent you a letter. ("... **toward you**.")	Би та нар луу захиа илгээв.	[illegible]

1.2.2.1.3.7 "тэд (нар)" = "they"

a	**They** are playing.	Тэд (нар) тоглож байна.	[illegible]
b	**Their** father is a teacher.	Тэдний (Тэд нарын) аав багш.	[illegible]
c	Give **them** many balls.	Тэдэнд (Тэд нарт) олон бөмбөг өг!	[illegible]
d	Please train **them** in the German language.	Тэднийг (Тэд нарыг) герман хэлэнд сургаач.	[illegible]
e	Don't ask them. ("...**from them**.")	Тэднээс (Тэд нараас) биттгий асуу!	[illegible]
f	Have them write it./ Have it be written **by them**."	Чи тэднээр (тэд нараар) бичүүл.	[illegible]
g	Come **with them** tomorrow to my home.	Маргааш тэдэнтэй (тэд нартай) манайд ир!	[illegible]
h	Please go **to(ward) them**.	Та тэд нар луу очоорой.	[illegible]

1.2.2.2 POSSESSIVE PROWORDS

In order to build possessive prowords, the **personal prowords** are used in the **genitive case with the possessive CbS "-х"** which is explained on page 101.

a	This book is **mine**./This book **belongs to me**.	Энэ ном минийх.	[illegible]
b	That pen is **yours**./That pen **belongs to you**.	Тэр үзэг чиний.	[illegible]
c	Is this **yours**?/Does this **belong to you**?	Энэ таных уу?	[illegible]
d	Is this **his/hers**?/Does this **belong to him/her**?	Энэ түүнийх мөн үү?	[illegible]

e	This horse is **ours**./This horse **belongs to us**.	Энэ морь манайх.	[illegible]
f	Is this **our** room? (e.g. in a hotel; here, not belonging!)	Энэ өрөө бидний мөн үү?	[illegible]
g	Is this **our** car? (e.g. on a trip; here, not belonging!)	Энэ машин бид нарынх мөн үү?	[illegible]
h	Is this house **yours**?/Does this house **belong to you**?	Энэ байшин танайх уу?	[illegible]
i	Are these books **yours**?/Do these books **belong to you**?	Энэ номууд та нарынх уу?	[illegible]
j	Oh no, **theirs**./Oh no, they **belong to them**.	Үгүй ээ, тэд нарынх.	[illegible]

1.2.2.3 REFLEXIVE PROWORDS

There are **2 words** which often appear together with the personal prowords and are **coupled back** to them by adding either the **RS** (see p. 108) or a **CbP** (see p. 106-107). Thus, the name '**reflexive** proword' is only correct if it refers to the expression as a whole (with RS or CbP).

өөр (өөрөө)	[illegible]	-self/own	for singular
өөрсөд (өөрсдөө)	[illegible]	-selves/own	for plural

1.2.2.3.1 Declension of Reflexive Prowords

refers to the **CbP**'s "минь/ маань/ чинь/ тань/ нь" ([illegible]) which, for reasons of space, we won't write in the table below.

Case	Singular		Plural	
Nom	өөрөө	[illegible]	өөрсдөө	[illegible]
Gen.	өөрийнхөө	[illegible]	өөрсдийнхөө	[illegible]
	өөрийн #	[illegible] #	өөрсдийн #	[illegible] #
Dat.	өөртөө	[illegible]	өөрсөддөө	[illegible]
	өөрт #	[illegible] #	өөрсөд #	[illegible] #
Acc.	өөрийгөө	[illegible]	өөрсдийгөө	[illegible]
	өөрий(г) #	[illegible] #	өөрсдий(г) #	[illegible] #
Abl.	өөрөөсөө	[illegible]	өөрсдөөсөө	[illegible]
	өөрөөс #	[illegible] #	өөрсдөөс #	[illegible] #
Instr.	өөрөөрөө	[illegible]	өөрсдөөрөө	[illegible]
	өөрөөр #	[illegible] #	өөрсдөөр #	[illegible] #
Com.	өөртэйгөө	[illegible]	өөрсөдтэйгөө	[illegible]
	өөртэй #	[illegible] #	өөрсөдтэй #	[illegible] #
Dir.	өөр лүүгээ	[illegible]	өөрсөд рүүгээ	[illegible]
	өөр лүү #	[illegible] #	өөрсөд рүү #	[illegible] #

1.2.2.3.2 Usage of Reflexive Prowords

When the reflexive proword is **coupled to the subject**, it is translated as **'-self/-selves'**. When it has adjective function and is **coupled to an object** which is in genitive case, it is translated as **'own'**. In the nominative case, the RS is always needed.

1.2.2.3.2.1 Examples in Nominative Case

a	I made this **myself**.	Би үүнийг **өөрөө** хийсэн.	[illegible]
b	Where do **you** work? ("**Self***, where work?")	(Та/ чи) Өөрөө* хаана ажилладаг вэ?	[illegible]
c	How old are **you**? ("**Self***, how many age?")	(Та/ чи) Өөрөө* хэдэн настай вэ?	[illegible]
d	He/She can do this **him/herself**.	Тэр **өөрөө** үүнийг хийж чадна.	[illegible]
e	We learn English by **ourselves**.	Бид англи хэл **өөрсдөө** сурч байна.	[illegible]
f	Last year, we were living in Germany **too**.	Бид өнгөрсөн жил **өөрсдөө** Германд амьдарч байсан.	[illegible]
g	We'll do this **ourselves**.	Манайхан **өөрсдөө** үүнийг хийнэ.	[illegible]
h	Children! Help **yourselves**! ("Please serve to you **yourselves**.")	Хүүхдүүд ээ! Өөрөө өөртөө үйлчлээрэй! (double plural unnecessary!)	[illegible]
i	The parents, **themselves,** have come up with such an idea.	Эцэг эхчүүд **өөрсдөө** ийм санал гаргажээ.	[illegible]

* Explanation:
If you don't know whether to say "та" or "чи" (e.g. in a "get-to-know" situation of people of the same age) this reflexive proword can be used instead. (English speakers don't have this problem, as 'you' can be direct or honorary.)

1.2.2.3.2.2 Examples in Genitive Case

"өөрийнхөө"="өөр"(proword) + "ийн"(genitive CS) + "х"(inserted consonant) + "өө"(RS)

a	Why, then, didn't you sit on **your own** chair?	Чи яагаад **өөрийнхөө** сандал дээр суугаагүй юм бэ?	[illegible]
b	Saraa, clean **your own** room nicely, please.	Сараа, **өөрийнхөө** өрөөг сайхан цэвэрлээрэй!	[illegible]
c	Saraa finished **her own** tasks and then she helped Bold.	Сараа **өөрийнхөө** үүргийг биелүүлчихээд Болдод туслав.	[illegible]
d	We must do **our own** jobs ourselves.	Бид **өөрсдөө** **өөрсдийнхөө** ажлыг хийх ёстой.	[illegible]
f *	I cleaned **your** room.	Өөрийн чинь өрөөг би цэвэрлэсэн.	[illegible]
g *	What's **your** name?	Өөрийн тань нэр хэн бэ?	[illegible]

h	One's **own** things are debtless.	Өөрийн юм өргүй. (proverb; general statement, therefore no RS)	[illegible]

* **ex. f-g**: Here the **neutral word** "өөр" is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as are the personal prowords "та/чи".

1.2.2.3.2.3 Examples in Other Cases

a	Please give this **to him** and only **him**!	Үүнийг зөвхөн өөрт нь өгөөрэй.	[illegible]
b	I bought this **for myself**.	Би үүнийг өөртөө авсан.	[illegible]
c *	We bought a gift for **you**.	Бид нар өөрт чинь бэлэг авсан. (тань/чамд)	[illegible]
d	Would you please introduce **yourselves**.	Та нар өөрсдийгөө танилцуулна уу.	[illegible]
e	Don't praise **yourself**!	Өөрийгөө битгий магт!	[illegible]
f	It's their fault they're late. ("It 's because **of themselves**...")	Тэд нар өөрсдөөсөө болж хожимдсон.	[illegible]
g	Please have them do this **by themselves**.	Үүнийг тэд нараар өөрсдөөр нь хийлгээрэй.	[illegible]
h	I talked **to myself**.	Би өөртэйгөө ярьсан.	[illegible]
i	Could you pull that table a little **toward yourself/yourselves**?	Энэ ширээг өөр лүүгээ жаахан татаж болох уу?	[illegible]

* **ex. c**: Here the neutral word "өөр" is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as the personal prowords "та/чи".

1.2.2.3.3 Other Reflexive Words

Some **other words** can also be **coupled back to the subject** with the help of the **RS**. Such phrases must not be taken apart as they form a **new unit** and are mostly translated with new English words (alone, throughout, etc.).

a	I'm at home **alone**. ("...**by my single**.")	Би гэртээ ганцаараа байна. (ганц+аар+аа)	[illegible]
b	We **all** will watch a movie **together**. ("We **by us all**...")	Бид бүгдээрээ кино үзнэ. (бүгд+ээр+ээ)	[illegible]
c	We **all** love our motherland. ("We **by us all** ...")	Бид цөмөөрөө эх орондоо хайртай. (цом+өөр+өө)	[illegible]
d	**In the whole** world, people fight for peace. (World **by its total**...")	Дэлхий нийтээрээ энх тайвны төлөө тэмцэж байна. (нийт+ээр+ээ)	[illegible]
e	**Throughout** the country, people are talking about this. ("Country **by whole**...")	Орон даяараа энэ тухай ярьж байна. (даяар+аа)	[illegible]

1.2.2.4 DEMONSTRATIVE PROWORDS

Demonstrative prowords, as the name already indicates, point or refer to something. They can take on the function of a noun and can then be **declined**. Most of these demonstrative prowords appear in **pairs**. Usually, the **distance to the speaker** is the main difference between these two pair words.

1.2.2.4.1 Overview of Demonstrative Prowords

The word stems in parentheses are used for the declension (to add suffixes). In colloquial language, some people decline the **stems** "тэр/энэ" (e.g. тэрийг, энийг, тэрэнд, тэрнээс).

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
энэ (үүн-) тэр (түүн-)	[illegible] (ᠬᠦᠨ/) [illegible] (ᠲᠦᠨ/)	this (here) that (there)	**Singular**; represent **adjectives**. Note that "энэ (үүн)" can never represent a noun (person).
эдгээр тэдгээр **as nouns:** эд нар (эдэн-) тэд нар (тэдэн-)	[illegible] [illegible] **as nouns:** [illegible] [illegible] ([illegible]) [illegible] [illegible] ([illegible])	these (here) those (there)	**Plural**; represent **adjectives**. When used as nouns, "эдгээр/тэдгээр" represent **things**, and "эд (нар)/тэд (нар)" represent **people**. **Ex.:** Эдгээрийг чи аваарай. (хонь) Эднийг/Эд нарыг чи хараарай. (хүүхдүүд)
ийм тийм	[illegible] [illegible]	such, as ... as this such, as ... as that	Represent **adjectives**.
иймэрхүү тиймэрхүү	[illegible] [illegible]	this kind that kind	Represent **adjectives**. They are **more general** than "ийм/тийм".
өнөө нөгөө	[illegible] [illegible]	this other .... that other	Represent **adjectives** and always refer to something that is known to the speaker, something that was **mentioned before**.
өнөөтөх нөгөөтөх	[illegible] [illegible]	this other one that other one	Represent **adjectives in a noun function**.
өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	[illegible] [illegible]	these others those others	Represent **nouns** (**people**).
өдий тэдий	[illegible] [illegible]	as many as this as many as that	Represent **numerals**, usually **countable** numerals.
өчнөөн тэчнээн	[illegible] [illegible]	as much as this as much as that	Represent **numerals**, usually **uncountable** numerals. [(т)өчнөөн = (т)өдий+ чинэ]
ингэ- тэгэ-	[illegible] [illegible]	to do it this way to do it that way	Represent **verbs** and can be **conjugated** like verbs.

1.2.2.4.2 Usage of Demonstrative Prowords

Many of the demonstrative prowords can be **used in pairs** and then gain a **new meaning** (see the examples with an "*" on the next pages).

1.2.2.4.2.1 "энэ/тэр, (т)эдгээр, (т)эд (нар)" = "this/that, these/those"

When these demonstrative prowords are **used as nouns** (example sentences in parentheses), the following has to be considered:

- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **people in singular**, the "түүн–" stem has to be used and, in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex. c,d.**
- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **people in plural**, "(т)эд нар/(т)эдэн" are used and,in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex.g-h.**
- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **things in singular**, the "үүн–" stem should be used, but often people add the case suffixes to the "энэ" stem (энийг), which is wrong. In English, it's best to add the word 'one', thus saying **'this one (here)', 'that one (there)'**: **ex. e-f**
- If "энэ/тэр/(т)эдгээр" are referring to **things in plural**, "(т)эдгээр" is used and, in English, it's translated as **'these (ones) here', 'those (ones) there'**: **ex. i-j.**

a	What's **this**?	Энэ юу вэ?	[illegible]
b	What's **that**?	Тэр юу вэ?	[illegible]
c	Do you know **this** person? (Do you know **him**?)	Та энэ хүнийг таних уу? (Та түүнийг таних уу?)	[illegible]
d	Please ask **that** student. (Please ask **him**.)	Та тэр оюутнаас асуугаарай. (Та түүнээс асуугаарай.)	[illegible]
e	I bought **this** cup. (I bought **this one**.)	Би энэ аягыг авсан. (Би үүнийг авсан.) [Би энийг авсан.= colloquial]	[illegible]
f	Please take **that** car. (Please take **that one**.)	Та тэр машинаар яваа–рай. (Та түүгээр яваарай.)	[illegible]
g	What are **these** people doing here? (What are **they** doing here?)	Энэ хүмүүс энд юу хийж байна вэ? (Эд [нар] энд юу хийж байна вэ?)	[illegible]
h	Please have this work done by **those** people. (Please have this work done by **them**.)	Энэ ажлыг тэдгээр хүмүүсээр хийлгээрэй. (Энэ ажлыг тэд нараар [тэднээр] хийлгээрэй.)	[illegible]
i	Let's move **these** tables from this room. (Let's move **these here/the ones here** from this room.)	Эдгээр ширээг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая. (Эдгээрийг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая.)	[illegible]
j	Please put this book together with **those** books. (Please put this book together with **those over there**.)	Энэ номыг тэдгээр номтой хамт тавиарай. (Энэ номыг тэдгээртэй хамт тавиарай.)	[illegible]
k *	We didn't notice that it had become late, having been talking about **this and that.**	Бид хоёр энэ тэрийг ярьсаар орой болсныг мэдсэнгүй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.4.2.2 "(т)ийм, (т)иймэрхүү" = "such, this/that kind of"

a	My father is **as** big **as this**.	Миний аав ийм өндөр.	[illegible]
b	My father is **as** big **as that**.	Миний аав тийм өндөр.	[illegible]

c	I don't need a table **like this**.	Надад <u>ийм</u> ширээ хэрэггүй.	[illegible]
d	I won't buy something from a person **like that**.	Би <u>тийм</u> хүнээс юм авахгүй.	[illegible]
e	Let me buy **such** a blouse. (Let me buy **one like this**.)	Би <u>ийм</u> цамц авъя. (Би иймийг авъя.)	[illegible]
f	**This kind of** math problem he solves well.	<u>Иймэрхүү</u> тоог тэр сайн боддог.	[illegible]
g	I don't like talking about **this kind of** thing.	Би <u>иймэрхүү</u> юмны тухай ярих дургүй.	[illegible]
h	I am looking for **that kind of** a house.	Би <u>тиймэрхүү</u> байшин хайж байна.	[illegible]
i	I can't cook **that kind of** meal.	Би <u>тиймэрхүү</u> хоол хийж чаддаггүй.	[illegible]
j*	Decide for yourself! But make sure you don't bring this up again. ("make sure you don't talk **this and that.**")	Чи өөрийнхөөрөө шийд. Харин дараа <u>ийм тийм</u> юм яриузай.	[illegible]

1.2.2.4.2.3 "өнөө(төх)/.нөгөө(төх)..өнөөдүүл/.нөгөөдүүл" = *"this/that other (one)"*

a	Did you watch **that one** film to the end?	Та <u>нөгөө</u> киногоо дуустал үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
b	Did you watch **that other one** to the end?	Та <u>нөгөөтхөө</u> дуустал үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
c	Did you talk with your husband about **that other** matter?	Та нөхөртэйгөө <u>нөгөө</u> юмны тухай ярьсан уу?	[illegible]
d	Did you talk with your husband about **that other one**?	Та нөхөртэйгөө <u>нөгөөтхийн</u> тухай ярьсан уу?	[illegible]
e	Please give me **this very** book./Please give me the book **you mentioned**.	Та надад <u>өнөө</u> номоо өгөөч.	[illegible]
f	Please give me **this very one**./Please give me **the one you mentioned**.	Та надад <u>өнөөтхөө</u> өгөөч.	[illegible]
g	**Those other** people, you know, have come.	<u>Нөгөө</u> хүмүүс чинь ирлээ.	[illegible]
h	**Those other ones,** you know, have come.	<u>Нөгөөдүүл</u> чинь ирлээ.	[illegible]
i	Where are **the others**?	<u>Өнөөдүүл</u> маань хаана байна?	[illegible]

1.2.2.4.2.4 "(т)өдий, (т)өчнөөн" = "as many/much as this/that"

a	Why didn't he get married for so long? ("...until he reached **as many as this**?")	Тэр яагаад өдий хүртэл гэрлээгүй вэ?	ᠬᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠳ᠂ ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠮᠳᠠᠭᠦᠢ᠂ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠷᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠷᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂
b	At this age, Mongolian children ride horses well. ("....in their **as many as this** age")	Монгол хүүхдүүд өдий насандаа морь сайн унадаг.	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ᠂ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠳᠦᠳ᠂ ᠥᠳᠢᠶᠢ᠂ ᠨᠠᠰᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭᠠᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨᠳ

1.2.2.5 INTERROGATIVE PROWORDS

Interrogative prowords are used to form questions. They can **represent different parts of speech**. Therefore, what other grammars call interrogative adverbs (where, when, how, why, what for, etc.), we have included in this big group of interrogative representatives.

1.2.2.5.1 Overview of Interrogative Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	What they ask for	Represent:
The words in this **first group** can be **declined in all cases** as they **represent nouns** or parts of speech that can be declined like nouns.				
хэн?		who?	**people**	nouns
юу (юун-)?		what?	**things** or **animals**	nouns
ямар?		what kind of?	**characteristics** of people or things	adjectives
аль (алин-)?		which?	**choices** of things or people	adjectives
хэд (хэдэн-)?		how many?	**countable things** (not strictly)	numerals
хичнээн?		how much? about how much?	**uncountable things** or **approximate mass** (not strictly)	numerals
The prowords in this **second group can't be declined** as they **never represent a noun**.				
хэзээ?		when?	**point of time (exactly)**	temporal adverb
хэдийд?		about when?	**point of time (approx.)**	temporal adverb
хаана? (хаа? = colloquial)		where?	**place**	local adverb
хаашаа?		where to?	**direction** (aim is important)	local adverb
хаанаас?		where from?	**local starting-point**	local adverb
хаагуур?		which way?	**direction** ('way' needed)	local adverb
хэр?		how? (e.g.big)	**manner,** (followed by adjective)	modal adverb --> adword
хэрхэн? (from:хэрхи-)		how?	**manner** (rather detailed)	modal adverb
яаж? (from: яа-)		how?	**manner** (rather general)	modal adverb
яагаад? (from: яа-)		why?	**reason**	causal adverb
The prowords in this third group **represent verbs** and can be **conjugated like verbs**.				
хэрхи-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs
яа-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs

1.2.2.5.2 Comparison of Interrogative Prowords

In a sentence, the interrogative prowords take the place of the words they represent. For emphasis, the prowords could be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

a	-**Who** gave Dorj money? -**Bat.**	−Доржид хэн мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −Бат.	- Өчигдөр. - Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ? Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ?
b	-**What** did Bat give to Dorj? -**Money**.	−Бат Доржид юу өгсөн бэ? −Мөнгө.	- Мөнгө. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ? Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ?
c	-**What kind of money** did Bat give to Dorj? -**Filthy** money.	−Бат Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −Бохир мөнгө.	- Бохир мөнгө. Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ?
d	-**Which** money did Bat give to Dorj? -**His own** money.	−Бат Доржид аль мөнгийг өгсөн бэ? −Өөрийнхөө мөнгийг.	- Аливаа ч/ ямар/ мөнгө вэ. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө вэ
e	-**How many** төгрөгс did Bat give to Dorj? -**A thousand**.	−Бат Доржид хэдэн төгрөг өгсөн бэ? −Мянган.	- Мянган/. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн
f	-**How much** money did Bat give to Dorj? -**More than 2 million**.	−Бат Доржид хичнээн мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −2 сая гаруй.	- 2 сая ч гаруй. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө
g	-**When** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Yesterday**.	−Бат Доржид хэзээ мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −Өчигдөр.	- Өчигдөр. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө ч Доржид
h	-**About when** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Last week**.	−Бат Доржид хэдийд мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −Өнгөрсөн долоо хоногт.	- Аливаа/ Өнгөрсөн/ долоо/ хоногт/. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар мөнгө ямар Доржид
i	-**Where** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**At home**.	−Бат Доржид хаана мөнгө өгсөн бэ? −Гэртээ.	- Гэр дотор/. Аливаа/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид ямар Доржид/ ч Доржид
j	-**Where** did Bat send Dorj **to**? -**To the bank**.	−Бат Доржийг хаашаа явуулсан бэ? −Банк руу.	- Банк руу. Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид гэр Доржид/ Доржийг/ явуулсан/
k	-**From where** did Bat send Dorj? -**From his home**.	−Бат Доржийг хаанаас явуулсан бэ? −Гэрээсээ.	- Гэр дотор/ Бэ/. явуулсан/ Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид гэр Доржид/ ч Бэ/
l	-**Which way** did Bat guide Dorj? -**Along the corridor**.	−Бат Доржийг хаагуур гаргасан бэ? −Хонгилоор.	- Хонгилоор. Бохир. - Өчигдөр Доржид гэр Доржид/ Гаргасан/

m	-**How** much money did Bat give to Dorj? -A lot. ("**Very** much.")	–Бат Доржид хэр (их) мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –Маш их.	- ᠬᠠᠨᠳᠠ᠂ᠬᠠᠨᠳᠠ᠂᠂ ᠳᠣᠷᠵᠢᠳᠤᠮᠠᠭᠠᠴᠢᠨᠠᠷ᠂ᠪᠠᠲᠤᠷᠠᠭᠠᠴᠢᠨᠠᠷ᠂᠂ - ᠪᠠᠲᠤᠷᠠᠭᠠᠴᠢᠨᠠᠷ᠂᠂᠂

1.2.2.5.3.2 "юу(н)?" = "what?"

a	**What** is this?	Энэ юу вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What** came? (e.g. cat, ship)	Юу ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
G.	**What** do you teach? ("**What** teacher are you?")	Та юуны багш вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** is this medicine **for**? ("хэрэгтэй" demands dat.)	Энэ эм юунд хэрэгтэй вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What** did he ask?	Тэр юу асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
A.	What are you afraid of? ("**From what** are you...")	Чи юунаас айдаг вэ?	[illegible]
L.	How did you come? ("**By what** did you come?")	Чи юугаар ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
C.	**What** will you wear? ("**With what** [clothes] will you come?	Та юутай ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** are you yearning **for**? ("**Towards what** are you rushing?")	Чи юу руу тэмүүлж байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.3 "ямар?" = "what kind of?"

Note: the CbP "нь" serves here as a **noun marker** (**ex. D,A**).

a	How much is this? ("With **what kind of** price is this?")	Энэ ямар үнэтэй вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What kind of** hat is this?	Энэ ямар малгай вэ?	[illegible]
c	**What kind of** animal did you see?	Чи ямар амьтан харсан бэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What kind of** *one* do you like? (e.g. car)	Та ямарт нь дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What kind of** *one* will you buy? (e.g. table)	Чи ямрыг нь авах вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.4 "аль/алин?" = "which?"

Sometimes these prowords are used in very different expressions (**ex. c-e**). The CbP "нь" refers here to the **other things (3rd person)** from which the choice is being made. The translation for this "нь" could be '***one***', thus serving also as a **noun marker**.

a	**Which** color do you like?/ **Which *one* of these** colors do you like?	Чи аль өнгөнд нь дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Which** car pleases you?/ **Which *one* of these** cars pleases you?	Аль машин нь чамд таалагдаж байна вэ?	[illegible]
c	Go as quickly as you can!	Чи аль болохоор хурдан яв!	[illegible]
d	Take the best *one*!	Аль сайныг нь аваарай.	[illegible]
e	One can't stop telling all his bad things.	Түүний аль мууг хэлж барах вэ!	[illegible]
D.	**In which *one*** of those two houses do you live?	Та тэр хоёр байшинг-гийн алинд нь суудаг вэ?	[illegible]

A.	Are you afraid of cats or dogs? ("**From which** *one* of the two, cat or dog, are you afraid?")	Та муур нохой хоёрын алинаас нь айдаг вэ?	[illegible]
C.	**Which** *one* of them will you meet? ("**With which one** ...")	Та тэдний алинтай нь уулзах вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.5 "хэд(эн)?" = "how many?"

By using **different** ***stems***, different *meanings* can be expressed (see **ex. D**).

a	How old are you? ("With **how many** age are you?")	Чи хэдэн настай вэ?	[illegible]
b	**How many** tögrögs is this?	Энэ хэдэн төгрөг вэ?	[illegible]
c	**How much** is this?	Энэ хэд вэ?	[illegible]
D.	What *time* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи хэдэд ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
D.	What *date* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи хэдэнд ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
A.	**How many** will you buy?	Чи хэдийг авах вэ?	[illegible]
I.	**For how much** will you give this?	Та үүнийг хэдээр өгөх вэ?	[illegible]
C.	How old are you? ("**With how many** are you?")	Чи хэдтэй вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.6 "хичнээн?" = "(about) how much?"

The СbР "нь" serves here as a **noun marker**.

a	**How much** snow fell there?	Тэнд хичнээн цас орсон бэ?	[illegible]
b	**About how much** do you need?	Чамд хичнээн хэрэгтэй вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**How many** of those *(ones)* will you buy?	Тэдгээрээс хичнээ-нийг нь чи авах вэ?	[illegible]
C.	**How many** of them will you meet **with**? ("**With how many** of those *ones*...")	Та тэдгээрээс хичнээнтэй нь уулзах вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.7 "хэзээ?/ хэдийд?" = "(about) when?"

The **difference** between these two prowords is only a **matter of exactness**. With "хэзээ", an **exact answer** is expected, with "хэдийд", a **general answer** will do. Thus, the answer to "**Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?**" could be 'I'll come at 3pm.' and to "**Чи хэдийд ирэх вэ?**" it could be 'Sometime in the afternoon'. But what is called 'exact' and 'general' always depends on the whole context of the conversation.

a	**When** will you come?	Та хэзээ / хэдийд ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
b	**When** will it be ready?	Энэ хэзээ / хэдийд бэлэн болох вэ?	[illegible]
c	**When** did you meet her?	Та түүнтэй хэзээ / хэдийд уулзсан бэ?	[illegible]

d	**When** is your national holiday?	Танай үндэсний баяр хэзээ / хэдийд болдог вэ?	[illegible]
e	**When** were you born?	Чи хэзээ / хэдийд төрсөн бэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.8 "хаа(на)?" = "where?"

a	**Where** was I born? (title of a poem)	Би хаана төрөв вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Where** do you live?	Та хаа(на) амьдардаг вэ?	[illegible]
c	**Where** did you go (to)?	Та хаана очсон бэ?	[illegible]
d	**Where** is Hong Kong situated?	Гонгконг хаана оршдог вэ?	[illegible]
e	**Where** should such a good person be!	Ийм сайн хүн хаа байна!	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.9 "хаашаа?" = "where to?"

a	**Where** are we off **to**?	Бид хаашаа явж байна вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Where** will you move **to**?	Та нар хаашаа нүүх вэ?	[illegible]
c	**Where** will (we) go **to** next?	Дараа нь хаашаа очих вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.10 "хаанаас?" = "where from?"

a	**Where** did you come **from**? / **Where** are you **from**?	Та хаанаас ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
b	**Where** do [I] find him? ("ол–" demands ablative)	Түүнийг хаанаас олох вэ?	[illegible]
c	**Where** did you hear this? ("сонс–" demands ablative)	Энэ тухай чи хаанаас сонссон бэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.11 "хаагуур?" = "which way"?

To understand the meaning of "хаагуур", one has to understand the meaning of the instrumental case **as** "хаагуур" **is derived from** "хаа(на)" **plus instrumental CS.** This proword always refers to a **movement that happens in a certain place/area**.

a	**Where** have you been today?	Чи өнөөдөр хаагуур явсан бэ?	[illegible]
b	**Which way** do you go to get to the Academy?	Академид очиход хаагуур явах вэ?	[illegible]
c	**Which part** of the city of Ulaanbaatar does the Tuul river flow **through**?	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хотын хаагуур урсдаг вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.12 "хэр?" = "how?"

a	**How** long will you be living in Mongolia?	Та Монголд хэр удаан амьдрах вэ?	[illegible]

b	**-How** are you living in Mongolia?/-**What's** your living standard like in Mongolia? -We live here OK./-It's OK.	–Та Монголд хэр зэрэг амьдарч байна вэ? –Би энд зүгээр амьдарч байна.	- Би энд амьдарч байна. Болно. - Бид энд зүгээр амьдарч байна.
c	**How** long of a wire does one need to make an antenna?	Антена хийхэд хэр урт утас хэрэгтэй вэ?	Мэдэхгүй ба. Антенд (хэр ба) ямар ямаа хэрэгтэй
d	**How** big a table am I supposed to buy?	Би хэр том ширээ авах хэрэгтэй вэ?	Ба. Би ямар ойлгож ширээ авах ёстой

1.2.2.5.3.13 "хэрхэн?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** (with their answers) with "яаж" below to see the difference.

a	**-How** do you live in Mongolia? -I get a small salary from my organization.	–Та Монголд хэрхэн амьдарч байна вэ? –Би байгууллагаасаа бага зэрэг цалин авдаг.	Сайхан амьдрах. - Би байгууллагаасаа бага зэрэг цалин авдаг. Болно ба. - Бид ямар ямаа ажилладаг
b	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came to Mongolia voluntarily.	–Та Монголд хэрхэн ирсэн бэ? –Би Монголд сайн дураараа ирсэн.	Ирсэн. - Би ямар ямаа ирсэн гэж бодсон. - Бид ямар ямаа ирсэн.Ирсэн ба.
c	**-How** did you do this? -I asked many people and then I did it by myself.	–Чи үүнийг хэрхэн хийсэн бэ? –Би олон хүнээс асуугаад өөрөө бие даяж хийсэн.	Олонх хүн бидэнтэй ярилцсан. - Би хүмүүс рүү хандсан. - Бид хүн бүр ажилласан ба.
d	**How** do (they) manufacture Mercedes cars?	Мерседес машиныг хэрхэн хийдэг вэ?	Мерседес машин бүтээдэг ба.
e	**How** do you calm her down?	Түүнийг хэрхэн тайвшруулах вэ?	Өөрөө бүтээдэг өөрчлөгдөнө ба.

1.2.2.5.3.14 "яаж?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** with "хэрхэн" above to see the difference.

a	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came **via Hong Kong**.	–Та Монголд яаж ирсэн бэ? –Би Гонконгоор дамжиж ирсэн.	- Би Гонконгоор дамжиж ирсэн. - Бид Гонконгоор ирсэн ба.
b	**-How** did you do this? -I did it easily.	–Чи үүнийг яаж хийсэн бэ? –Би үүнийг амархан хийсэн.	- Би хүн бүр бодсон. - Би хүн бүр бодсон ба.
c	**How** does one quickly learn English?	Англи хэлийг яаж хурдан сурах вэ?	Ба. Англи хэл бүр сурсан бодлого хийсэн

1.2.2.5.3.15 "яагаад?" = "why, for what reason?"

a	**Why** hasn't he come?	Тэр яагаад ирээгүй вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Why** were you late?	Чи яагаад хожимдсон бэ?	[illegible]
c	**Why** isn't this computer working?	Энэ компьютер яагаад ажиллахгүй байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.16 "хэрхи-?" = "to do what?"

a	Do you know **what** they **did** with him?	Түүнийг тэд нар хэрхсэнийг чи мэдэх үү?	[illegible]
b	Talk well with each other and then please tell me **what** you're **going to do**.	Та нар сайн ярилцаад хэрхэх тухайгаа надад хэлээрэй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.17 "яа-?" = "to do what?"

With this interrogative proword, many **expressions** are formed (**ex. g-l**), some of which are difficult to trace back to their original meaning.

a	**What happened**?	Яасан бэ?	[illegible]
b	**What** shall I **do**?	Би яах вэ?	[illegible]
c	**What would** you **like to do?**	Та яамаар байна бэ?	[illegible]
d	**What in the world**!	Яах нь вэ?	[illegible]
e	(I) don't know **what to do**!	Яахыг бүү мэд!	[illegible]
f	This is impossible for me to do. ("**No matter what** I do, I can't achieve it.")	Би яавч амжихгүй.	[illegible]
g	**What** nice flowers!	Яасан сайхан цэцэг вэ!	[illegible]
h	I don't mind!/Either way is OK. ("**Whatever happened**, **what shall happen**?")	Яасан ч яахав! (note: яах +вэ)	[illegible]
i	**Of course!** ("What will happen if [we] don't do it that way?")	Тэгэлгүй яахав! (note: яах +вэ)	[illegible]
j	**No matter what happened,** we have to help him.	Яагаад ч гэсэн түүнд туслах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
k	**There's no way out**. ("Whatever happens, there is no means; whatever happens, a means is absent.")	Яах ч аргагүй, яах ч арга алга.	[illegible]
l	There is **still plenty of** time.	Цаг яагаа ч үгүй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.18 Repeated Interrogative Prowords Expressing Plural

When **asking for different** things, people, characteristics, etc. the interrogative proword is **used twice**. By putting this principle in English, we get the following impossible sentences:
'**What what** is here?' '**What kind of, what kind of** book is this?' '**Who who** do you see?'
By using this repeated form in Mongolian, the **plural suffixes can be omitted** (see page 76).

a	**Who all** has come?	Хэн хэн ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
b	**Who all** did you ask?	Чи хэн хэнээс асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
c	**What all** is here?	Энд юу юу байна вэ?	[illegible]
d	**What all** did you ask?	Чи юу юу асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
e	What all did you bring from the countryside? ("**With what all** did you come?")	Чи юу юутай хөдөөнөөс ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
f	**What kind of** books are here?	Энд ямар ямар ном байна вэ?	[illegible]
g	In **which** buildings do foreigners live?	Гадаадын хүмүүс аль аль байшинд суудаг вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.6 INDEFINITE PROWORDS

Those words which represent an **indefinite person, object, kind, characteristic, circumstance, mass, etc.** are called indefinite prowords. They are mostly formed with the help of the **focus particle** "ч". Often they are used in **negation** with the negative particle "–гүй". Therefore, the translations vary a lot, depending on whether the sentence is affirmative (e.g. 'everyone/anyone') or negative (e.g. 'no one'). Some indefinite prowords can be **declined**, but note that the case suffix is not added to the particle "ч", but to the proword itself.

1.2.2.6.1 Overview of Indefinite Prowords

хэн ч	[illegible]	who(so)ever, no matter who, anybody, anyone
хэн ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nobody, no one (at all)
хэн нэг(эн)	[illegible]	somebody, someone, anybody
хэн хэнгүй	[illegible]	everyone; all, no matter who
юу ч	[illegible]	what(so)ever, no matter what, anything
юу ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nothing, none (at all)
юу юугүй	[illegible]	"just like that", very soon, for no reason at all
ямар ч	[illegible]	whatever kind of, no matter what kind of, any kind of
ямар ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	no ... at all, no ... whatsoever
ямар нэг(эн)	[illegible]	any, some (kind of)
алин ч	[illegible]	whichever, no matter which (one)
алин ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	none (at all)
аль нэг(эн)	[illegible]	any, any one
аль альгүй	[illegible]	none of them

хэд(эн) ч	[illegible]	no matter how many
хэд(эн) ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	none at all
хичнээн ч	[illegible]	no matter how much
хичнээн ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nothing at all
хэзээ ч (хэдийд ч)	[illegible]	whenever, no matter when, always
хэзээ ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	never
хэзээ нэг(эн) (цагт, үед) хэзээ нэгэнтээ	[illegible] [illegible]	sometime at any time
хэзээ хэзээгүй	[illegible]	every (moment) now
хаана ч	[illegible]	wherever, no matter where, everywhere
хаана ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere (at all)
хаа нэг(эн) (газар...) хаа нэгэнтээ	[illegible] [illegible]	somewhere at any place
хаа хаагүй	[illegible]	everywhere
хаашаа ч	[illegible]	no matter where to
хаашаа ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere
хаанаас ч	[illegible]	no matter where from
хаанаас ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	from nowhere
хаагуур ч	[illegible]	wherever (movement) whichever way
хаагуур ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere (movement)
яаж ч	[illegible]	however, no matter how, in every way
яаж ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	in no way
яа– ч ...	[illegible]	to do whatever

1.2.2.6.2 Usage of Indefinite Prowords

1.2.2.6.2.1 "хэн ч" = "who(so)ever, everyone, anyone, no one"

a	**Anybody/Everybody** can do this work.	Энэ ажлыг хэн ч хийж чадна.	[illegible]
b	When he returned, **no one/nobody** recognized him.	Түүнийг буцаж ирэ–хэд хэн ч таньсангүй.	[illegible] [illegible]
c	**No matter which person** in my class (you) charge with this, (it) will be done well.	Манай ангийн хэнд ч (иг) даалгасан сайн биелүүлнэ. (хэнд +ч +гэсэн)	[illegible] [illegible]
d	Call **anyone** of them, no matter which one.	Тэднээс хэнийг нь ч хамаагүй дууд!	[illegible] [illegible]

e	Bat can make friends with **anybody/anyone/everybody/everyone**.	Бат хэнтэй ч нөхөрлөж чаддаг.	[illegible]
f	**Nobody/No one** knows this.	Үүнийг хэн ч мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]
g	If **somebody/ someone/ anybody/anyone** comes, please call me.	Хэн нэгэн хүн ирвэл намайг дуудаарай.	[illegible]
h	**Someone/Somebody** gave this to me.	Үүнийг хэн нэгэн нь надад өгчээ.	[illegible]
i	**Everyone** has to learn English well, **no matter who**.	Хэн хэнгүй англи хэл сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.2 "юу ч" = "what(so)ever, everything, anything, nothing"

a	**Whatever** I rub on, it suits me.	Надад юу ч түрхсэн сайхан таардаг.	[illegible]
b	After we two get a gun, we won't be afraid of **anything**.	Буутай хойно юу ч болсон бид хоёр айхгүй.	[illegible]
c	**Whatever** he gives me, I won't give my dog (away).	Түүнийг юу ч өгсөн би нохойгоо өгөхгүй.	[illegible]
d	He doesn't know **anything**. /He knows **nothing**.	Тэр юу ч мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]
e	They returned from the countryside with **nothing**.	Тэд хөдөөнөөс юу ч үгүй ирсэн.	[illegible]
f	Please give me something to drink, **no matter what**!	Надад юу ч хамаагүй уух юм өгөөч!	[illegible]
g	As soon as she came in, she broke into tears **for no reason.**	Тэр орж ирмэгцээ юу юугүй уйлж гарав.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.3 "ямар ч" = "whatever kind of, any kind, no ... whatsoever"

a	**Every** nation has its own customs. ("**No matter what** nation...")	Ямар ч(иг) ард түмэн өөрийн ёс заншилтай. ("чиг" is colloquial)	[illegible]
b	**Every/Any** person knows this. ("**No matter what kind of** ...")	Ямар ч хүн үүнийг мэднэ.	[illegible]
c	He did this without the slightest attention. ("...**with no** attention **whatsoever**.")	Тэр үүнийг ямар ч хяналтгүйгээр хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	At the moment, there is **no** news **whatsoever**.	Одоохондоо ямар ч сонингүй.	[illegible]
e	Yesterday, **not one** single person **whatsoever** came to my home.	Өчигдөр манайд ямар ч хүн ирээгүй.	[illegible]

f	What's the matter? Has **something** happened?	Яав, ямар нэгэн юм болов уу?	[illegible]
g	Well, do (you) have **any** news?	За, ямар нэгэн сонинтой юу?	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.4 "аль ч" = "whichever, none"

a	In **every** big city, many people live. ("In **which-ever** big city...")	Аль ч (иг) том хотод олон хүн суудаг.	[illegible]
b	I don't mind **which** one. ("To me **whichever** has **no** relation.")	Надад бол аль нь ч хамаагүй.	[illegible]
c	Mother pleased **none**.	Ээжид аль нь ч таалагдсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He doesn't live in **either** of these two buildings.	Тэр энэ хоёр байшингийн алинд нь ч суудаггүй.	[illegible]
e	Give me **any one** of those.	Тэндээс аль нэгийг нь аваад өг.	[illegible]
f	The person who follows two rabbits is left with **neither** of them.	Хоёр туулай хөөсөн хүн аль альгүй хоцордог. (proverb)	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.5 "хэд(эн) ч" = "no matter how many"

a	**No matter how many** times I've seen this movie, I don't get bored.	Би энэ киног хэдэн ч удаа үзсэн уйдахгүй.	[illegible]
c	I have **no** tögrögs **at all.**	Надад хэдэн ч төгрөг байхгүй.	[illegible]
d	He returned from the country-side with **no** tögrögs **at all**.	Тэр хэдэн ч төгрөг-гүй хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.6 "хичнээн ч" = "no matter how much"

a	(I) told him this **a hundred** times, but it's pointless. (" ... **no matter how many** times ")	Түүнд энэ тухай хичнээн ч хэлээд нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
b	He'll probably give you **as much** money **as** you ask for.	Та түүнээс хичнээн ч мөнгө гуйсан тэр өгөх байх.	[illegible]
c	Even if he has **no** money **at all**, he'll help you.	Тэр хичнээн ч мөнгөгүй байсан танд туслана.	[illegible]
d	Even if he does**n't** exercise **at all**, he'll win this contest.	Тэр хичнээн ч дас-гал хийхгүй бай-сан энэ тэмцээнд түрүүлнэ.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.7 "хэзээ ч" = whenever, always, never"

"хэдийд" can be used instead of "хэзээ" **only** in **ex. a.**

a	You may come to my home **any time/always**.	Та хэзээ ч манайд ирж болно.	[illegible]
b	(I) will **never** go there!	Тийшээ хэзээ ч очихгүй!	[illegible]
c	His mother is probably **never** coming again.	Түүний эзж дахин хэзээ ч ирэхгүй байх.	[illegible]
d	This one is a longing that will **never** come true.	Энэ чинь хэзээ ч биелэхгүй мөрөөдөл.	[illegible]
e	Well, we'll meet **sometime**, won't we?	За, хэзээ нэгэн цагт уулзана биз дээ.	[illegible]
f	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll do that.	Хэзээ нэгэн цагт би үүнийг хийнэ.	[illegible]
g	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll return to my homeland.	Би хэзээ нэгэнтээ нутагтаа буцах болно.	[illegible]
h	**Any time now**, my friend will come from Germany.	Манай найз Германаас хэзээ хэзээгүй ирнэ.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.8 "хаана ч/ хааначаас ч/ хаашаа ч/ хаагуур ч" = 'wherever/everywhere/nowhere'

a	Good friends are **everywhere**.	Сайн найз хаана ч бий.	[illegible]
b	Although (I) went into most shops and looked, (it) was **nowhere**.	Ихэнх дэлгүүрээр орж хайсан болович хаана ч байсангүй.	[illegible]
c	This is news that has**n't** been heard **anywhere**.	Энэ хаана ч дуулдаагүй мэдээ шүү.	[illegible]
d	That other book of mine must be **somewhere**!	Миний тэр ном хаана нэгэн газар л байх ёстой.	[illegible]
e	I met this person **somewhere**.	Би энэ хүнтэй хаа нэгэнтээ уулзсан.	[illegible]
f	We have to tackle this problem from every side. ("... **everywhere**.")	Бид энэ асуудлыг хаа хаагүй сайн анхаарах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
g	I haven't found my key anywhere.	Би түлхүүрээ хааначаас ч олоогүй.	[illegible]
h	We can go **anywhere** for summer vacation.	Бид энэ зуны амралтаар хаашаа ч явж болно.	[illegible]
i	**Whichever way** you go, it's OK.	Та хаагуур ч явсан болно.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.9 "яаж ч" = "however, in every way, in no way".

a	**However** you **do** this, it's OK.	Чи үүнийг яаж ч хийсэн болно.	[illegible]
b	He can harm you in **all kinds of ways**.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадна.	[illegible]
c	**However** I tried **to do** (it), I couldn't translate it.	Би яаж ч оролдоод үүнийг орчуулж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He can't do **anything** to you.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадахгүй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.10 "яа~ ч" = "to do whatever".

a	**No matter what happens**, I won't leave.	Яаж ч байсан би эндээс явахгүй.	[illegible]
b	Please come **no matter what happens**.	Чи яагаад ч гэсэн заавал ирээрэй.	[illegible]
c	It **absolutely** doesn't matter to me./I don't mind **at all**.	Би яасан ч хамаагүй.	[illegible]
d	**No matter what happens**, he'll never tell you a lie.	Тэр яалаа ч чамд худал хэлэхгүй.	[illegible]

2. ABSTRACT PARTS OF SPEECH

We have divided the abstract parts of speech into 4 subgroups:
1.) Postpositions
2.) Conjunctions
3.) Particles
4.) Interjections

These 4 groups also exist in English, but with the difference that English uses **pre**positions to express the Mongolian **post**positions.

2.1 POSTPOSITIONS

2.1.1 Characteristics

The postpositions are always **linked to the previous word,** which is a **nominal element.** Therefore, they appear with the following suffixes:
- **Zero-suffixes** (the postposition follows the word stem)
- **Case suffixes** (mainly genitive)
- **Noun Determining Suffixes** (NDS's)

In Mongolian, the postpositions are also called **'Suffix words'**. By them, certain **conditions and relationships** are expressed. The postpositions originally derived from nouns. That's why the **genitive CS** is the **predominant link** between the nominal element and the postposition.

If an RS (see 1.1.1.3) is added to the nominal element, it's done in the following ways:

–ø	+ **postposition**	+ RS	e.g. багш шигээ
CS	+ RS	+ **postposition**	e.g. өөрийнхөө тухай
NDS	+ **postposition**	+ RS	e.g. явсан тухайгаа

Postpositions can be divided into **two groups**:
• Original postpositions
• Adwords in postpositional function

Following, we'll give an **overview table of both groups** and then example sentences for all postpositions in the order of the suffix they require.

2.1.2 Systematic Classification

2.1.2.1 ORIGINAL POSTPOSITIONS

Even the 'original postposition' are, very strictly spoken, **declined forms**. This can be clearly seen with the following postpositions:

дагуу (along)	from: "дага–" (to follow)
гаруй (more than)	from: "гар–" (to pass by/over)
шахам (nearly)	from: "шаха–" (to press, to squeeze)
хүртэл (until)	from: "хүр–" (to reach)
ёсоор (according to)	from: "ёс" (law, principle)

Contrary to the adwords in postpositional function, these **original postpositions can never be used by themselves** (without a suffix and nominal element).

Abbreviations of table: **–ø** = Zero-suffix; **NDS** = Noun Determining Suffix; **G.** = Genitive-CS;

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffix:
a	гаруй		more than ...	–ø : page 285
b	шахам		almost ... nearly...	–ø : page 285
c	орчим		about ... approximately ...	–ø : page 285
d	гэхэд		by	–ø : page 285
e	хүртэл		until ...	–ø : page 286 NDS : page 295
f	бүр		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286 NDS : page 295
g	болгон		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286 NDS : page 295
h	тутам		each... every ... ... by ...	–ø : page 286 NDS : page 295
i	ёсоор		according to ... in conformity with ...	–ø : page 286 NDS : page 295
j	мэт		as ... as ... like	–ø : page 287 NDS : page 296
k	шиг		as ... as ... like ...	–ø : page 287 NDS : page 296
l	тулд		(in order) to ...	G. : page 287
m	төлөө		for ...	G. : page 287
n	турш		during ...	G. : page 288
o	дагуу		according to ... along ...	G. : page 288
p	чинээ		as big as ..., having the size of ...	G. : page 288
q	дэргэд		at ... near ... by	G. : page 289
r	хооронд		between ...	G. : page 289
s	хажууд		beside	G. : page 289
t	тухай		about ...	G. : page 291 NDS : page 296
u	талаар		on ... with regard to...	G. : page 292 NDS : page 296

2.1.2.2 ADWORDS IN POSTPOSITIONAL FUNCTION

Some adwords (mostly adverbs, but also some adjectives*) can be **used as postpositions**. In this way, they are closely **linked with a suffix to a nominal element**.

The adwords **f,i and j** originally require the genitive case but tend to lose this requirement. In today's Mongolian language both forms (gen. and -ø) are possible. But notice that the **n-stem** appears with the -ø suffix.

Overview:

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffixes:
a	дээр		above ...	-ø : page 285
b	доор		under ...	-ø : page 286
c	адил *		similar to... like ...	-ø: page 287 G.: p. 293 C.: p. 295
d	наана		on this side of ...	G. : page 289
e	цаана		on that side of ...	G. : page 289
f	дотор #		in(side) ... among ...	G. : page 289 #-ø: page 289
g	ард		behind ...	G. : page 290
h	урд		south of ... in front of ...	G. : page 290
i	уруу #		... down(wards)	G. : page 290 #-ø: page 289
j	өөд #		... up(wards)	G. : page 290 #-ø: page 289
k	дараа		after	G. : page 290
l	эсрэг *		against	G. : page 291
m	дунд *		in the middle of ... among ...	G. : page 291
n	ойролцоо *		near by ...	G. : page 291
o	-уур		all adverbs with this suffix	G. : page 291
p	гадна *		out(side) of ... apart from ...	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
q	хойно		north of ... after ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
r	өмнө		before ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
s	ойр *		close to ...	Dat. -Loc.: page 293
t	бусад*		other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
u	өөр *		other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
v	илүү *		more than ...	Abl.: page 293
w	хол *		far from ...	Abl.: page 294
x	-(г)ш		all adverbs with this suffix	Abl.: page 294

2.1.3 Usage of Postpositions

2.1.3.1 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ZERO-SUFFIX

Such postpositions follow the ***word stem*** (in Cyrillic in *italics)* **directly**, with the so-called zero-suffix, which **indicates the subordination of the postposition to the nominal element**.

2.1.3.1.1 "гаруй" = "more than ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We came to Mongolia **more than** five years ago. ("We came to Mongolia and then it became more than 5 years.")	Бид Монголд ирээд 5 жил гаруй болж байна.	Монголд ирсэн цаг хугацаа 5 жилээс гаруй болжээ.
b	This car goes **more than** 60km/h.	Энэ машин цагт 60 гаруй километр явдаг.	Энэ машин нэг цагт 60-аас илүү километр явдаг.

2.1.3.1.2 "шахам" = "almost ..., nearly ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	Now Mister Tseren is **almost** 60 years old and retired.	Цэрэн гуай одоо 60 шахам настай, тэтгэвэртээ суудаг.	Цэрэн ахаа, одоогийн цагт 60-аас илүү насанд хүрсэн, тэтгэвэрт суудаг.
b	In the fridge, there must be **almost** 2 liters of milk.	Хөргөгчинд 2 литр шахам сүү байх ёстой.	Хөргөгчинд сүү 2-литр орчим байх ёстой.

2.1.3.1.3 "орчим" = "about ...; approximate ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We'll be living in Mongolia for **about** 3 years.	Бид Монголд 3 жил орчим амьдарна.	Бидэн Монголд 3 орчим жил амьдрах болно.
b	I bought **appr.** 5 kilos of apples at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс таван кило орчим алим авсан.	Би дэлгүүрээс 5-аас илүү кило орчим алим худалдан авсан.

2.1.3.1.4 "гэхэд" = "by ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	It appears as if the plane will come **by** three o'clock.	Онгоц 3 цаг гэхэд ирэх болоттой.	Онгоцыг 3 цаг гэхэд ирэх болно.
b	**By** the end of year, this job will probably be finished.	Энэ оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	Оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах ёстой.
c	**By** next spring, I hope that my Mongolian will have become quite good.	Ирэх хавар гэхэд миний монгол хэл овоо болно гэж найдаж байна.	Ирэх хавар гэхэд монгол хэлээ сайн мэдэхийг хүсч байна.

2.1.3.1.5 "дээр" = "on ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word).

a	That other book, you know, is **on** the table.	Нөгөө ном чинь ширээн дээр байна.	Нөгөө ном чинь ширээний дээр байна.
b	(Someone) put the alarm clock **on** the TV.	Сэрүүлэгтэй цагийг телевизор дээр тавьжээ.	Сэрүүлэгтэй цагийг телевизийн дээр

2.1.3.1.6 "доор" = "under ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word). In colloquial language, some words with no hidden 'n' (*) could suddenly appear with one (**ex. b**).

a	What did someone just put **under** your pillow?	Чиний дэрэн доор сая юу хийсэн бэ?	[illegible]
b	My key is on the shelf **under** a book.	Миний түлхүүр тавиур дээр, номон доор бий. (ном*)	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.7 "хүртэл" = "until ...; to ..."

a	He'll be here **until** December.	Тэр 12 сар хүртэл энд байна.	[illegible]
b	(You) can go by train from Ulaanbaatar **to** Darkhan .	Улаанбаатараас Дархан хүртэл галт тэргээр явж болно.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.8 "бүр/болгон" = "each ...; every ..."

"болгон" is used more in colloquial language.

a	**Every** year I go to a resort to rest.	Би жил бүр/болгон амралтын газар явж амардаг.	[illegible]
b	**Every** person has to learn English well.	Хүн бүр/болгон англи хэлийг сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
c	I bought a bag for **each** of my children.	Би хүүхэд бүрдээ/болгондоо нэг нэг цүнх авсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.9 "тутам" = "each ...; every ..."

Used for things that increase.

a	My Mongolian is getting better **every** year.	Миний монгол хэл жил тутам улам сайн болсоор байна.	[illegible]
b	In order to improve my Mongolian, I have lessons **every** day.	Би монгол хэлээ сайжруулахын тулд өдөр тутам хичээллэж байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.10 "ёсоор" = "according to ...; in conformity with ..."

The word root is 'law' and therefore, this postposition is strong in its meaning!

a	Everything is carried out **according to** our plan.	Бүх юм бидний төлөвлөгөө ёсоор явагдаж байна.	[illegible]
b	**In conformity with** the judge's verdict he got all his money.	Тэр шүүхийн тогтоол ёсоор бүх мөнгөө авсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.11 "мэт" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	When two people are friendly, they are **as** strong **as** an iron wall.	Хоёр хүн эвтэй бол төмөр хэрэм мэт бат. (proverb)	[illegible]
b	When twenty people are unfriendly, they are **as** fragile **as** a mud wall.	Хорин хүн эвгүй бол шавар хэрэм мэт хэврэг. (proverb)	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.12 "шиг" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	There is probably no person **as** lazy **as** I am.	Над шиг залхуу хүн байхгүй байх.	[illegible]
b	I desire to become **(such)** a person **like** my teacher.	Би багш шигээ хүн болохыг хүсдэг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.13 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	In Mongolia, there are many women with cheeks **as** red **as** apples.	Алим адил улаан хацартай хүүхэн Монголд олон бий.	[illegible]
b	This woman has a character **as** naive **as** a child.	Тэр эмэгтэй хүүхэд адил гэнэн зантай.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2 POSTPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE CS

As mentioned in the introduction, the genitive CS is the **most widely used suffix** to link the postpositions to the nominal elements. See also explanations to the RS (page 108).

2.1.3.2.1 "тулд" = "(in order) to ..."

Always follows after genitive. Note that the sVDS "−хаар" has a similar meaning (see p. 166).

a	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
b	**What** are you doing all this **for**? ("In order for what...")	Чи юуны тулд энэ бүх-нийг хийж байна вэ?	[illegible]
c	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to study it day by day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
d	In world history, there are many people who devoted their lives **for** the benefit of their nations.	Дэлхийн түүхэнд ард түмнийхээ тусын тулд амьдралаа зориулсан хүн олон байдаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.2 "төлөө" = "for ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Jesus died **for** us.	Есүс билний төлөө нас барсан.	[illegible]
b	I'll do everything **for** you.	Би таны төлөө бүхнийг хийнэ.	[illegible]

c	In his youth, Mister Dorj was fighting **for** his motherland.	Дорж гуай залуу насандаа эх орныхоо **төлөө** байлдаж явсан.	[illegible]
d	This person devoted his entire adult life to science. ("given **for...**)	Энэ хүн шинжлэх ухааны **төлөө** бүх ухамсарт амьдралаа зориулжээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.3 "турш" = "for ... (expressing time)"

Always follows after genitive. Note that the **sVDS** "-уут" (p. 170) stresses the **simultaneous** aspect of an action, but this postposition stresses more the **continuous** aspect.

a	I have been living in Mongolia **for** two years.	Би Монголд 2 жилийн **турш** амьдарч байна.	[illegible]
b	Every day, I have Mongolian language lessons **for** three hours.	Би өдөрт 3 цагийн **турш** Монгол хэлний хичээл хийдэг.	[illegible]
c	I have been traveling in the countryside **for** this whole summer.	Би энэ зуны **турш** хөдөө явсан.	[illegible]
d	I worked together with her **for** many years.	Би түүнтэй олон жилийн **турш** хамт ажиллаж байсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.4 "дагуу" = "according to ...; along(side) of ..."

Always follows after genitive. Word root is 'дага-, which menas 'to follow'.

a	I did everything **according to** what he said.	Би түүний хэлсэн**ий дагуу** бүгдийг хийсэн.	[illegible]
b	She endeavors to speak Mongolian **according to** the rules.	Тэр монгол хэлний дүрмийн **дагуу** ярихыг хичээдэг.	[illegible]
c	Everything is being carried out **the way** we planned it.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсн**ий дагуу** явагдаж байна.	[illegible]
d	Many trees were planted **along** the road.	Замын **дагуу** олон мод тарьжээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.5 "чинээ" = "as big as ...; having the size of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The white **as big as** a hare will defeat the black **as big as** a mountain.	Уулын **чинээ** харыг туулайн **чинээ** цагаан дийлнэ. (proverb)	[illegible]
b	Once upon a time there was a boy **as tall as** an elbow, and with a 'deel' **as big as** a sleeve. (fairy tale)	Эрт урьд цагт тохойн **чинээ** биетэй, ханцуйн **чинээ** дээлтэй нэгэн хүү байжээ.	[illegible]
c	A watermelon **the size of** a head grew.	Толгойн **чинээ** том шийгуа ургажээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.6 "дэргэд" = "at ...; near ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	A car came and stopped **at** his house.	Түүний байрны дэргэд нэг машин ирж зогслоо.	[illegible]
b	Our church building is **near** the American Embassy.	Америкийн элчингийн дэргэд манай цуглааны байшин бий.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.7 "хооронд" = "between ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	**Between** these two mountains there are no 'ails'.	Энэ хоёр уулын хооронд айл алга.	[illegible]
b	I sit in our classroom **between** my two friends.	Би ангидаа хоёр найзынхаа хооронд суудаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.8 "хажууд" = "beside ...; next to ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The garbage can is **beside** the door.	Хогын сав хаалганы хажууд бий.	[illegible]
b	The lady sitting **next to** him, is my grandmother.	Түүний хажууд сууж байгаа эмэгтэй бол миний эмээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.9 "наана" = "on this side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Some families settled **on this side** of that lake.	Тэр нуурын наана хэдэн айл буужээ.	[illegible]
b	**On this side of** the forest there are a lot of mushrooms.	Энэ ой модны наана зөндөө мөөг бий.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.10 "цаана" = "on the other side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	'Zuunmod', the center of the 'Töv aimag', is situated **on the other side of** 'Bogd' Mountain.	Богд уулын цаана Төв аймгийн төв Зуунмод хот бий.	[illegible]
b	I dug a deep hole **on the other side of** our yurt.	Би гэрийнхээ цаана нэг гүнзгий нүх ухсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.11 "дотор" = "in(side) ...; among ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He waited **in** the room.	Тэр өрөөн*(ий) дотор хүлээсэн. (* n-stem)	[illegible]

b	**Among** the Mongolians, there are many who speak German well.	Монголчуудын дотор германаар сайн ярьдаг хүн олон бий.	Монгол хүмүүсийн дотор герман хэлийг сайн ярьдаг хүн олон байдаг.
c	Is there milk **in** the fridge?	Хөргөгчин* дотор сүү бий юу? (*n-stem)	Хөргөгчний дотор сүү байдаг уу?

2.1.3.2.12 "ард" = "behind ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	He sat **behind me**.	Тэр миний ард суусан.	Тэр миний ард суусан.
b	**Behind** their house there is a beautiful garden.	Тэдний байшингийн ард гоё цэцэрлэг бий.	Тэдний байшингийн ард гоё цэцэрлэг байна.

2.1.3.2.13 "урд" = "in front of ...; south of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Dorj was sitting **in front of** me. (context needed)	Дорж миний урд сууж байсан.	Дорж миний урд сууж байсан.
b	Some people are standing **in front of** the house./...**south of** the house.	Байшингийн урд хэдэн хүн зогсож байна.	Байшингийн урд хэдэн хүн зогсоно. Байшингийн өмнө талд байна

2.1.3.2.14 "уруу" = "down(wards) ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He ran quickly **down** the mountain.	Тэр уул(ын) уруу хурдан гүйсэн.	Тэр уул (ын) хурдан гүйсэн.
b	The water of the river flows **down** (the land).	Голын ус газр(ын) уруу урсдаг.	Голын ус газар (ын) хурдан урсдаг.

2.1.3.2.15 "өөд" = "up(wards) ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	She crept **up** the mountain, panting.	Тэр уул(ын) өөд амьсгаадан мөлхөв.	Тэр уул (ын) хүрхирхийгээд явлаа.
b	This horse can't go **uphill**.	Энэ морь газр(ын) өөд явж чадахгүй.	Энэ морь газар (ын) хүндэд гарахгүй хөлөг .. ..

2.1.3.2.16 "дараа" = "after ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	We like to go into the fresh air after our supper.	Бид оройн хоолны хоо дараа салхинд явах дуртай.	Оройн хоолны дараа салхинд явах дуртай.
b	**After** three hours of lessons, I tend to be quite tired.	Би 3 цаг хичээл хийсний дараа нилээд ядардаг.	Би 3 цаг хичээлийн дараа ядардаг.
c	**After** I came to Mongolia for the first time, I was quite homesick.	Би анх Монголд ирсний хэсэ дараа нутгаа их санаж байсан.	Анхны удаа ирсний дараа би нутгаа санаж байсан.

2.1.3.2.17 "эсрэг" = "against ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	In the world, people are fighting **against** war.	Дэлхийд хүмүүс дай-ны эсрэг тэмцэж байна.	[illegible]
b	Although we were **against** this idea, it was decided in accordance with the opinion of the majority.	Бид энэ саналын эсрэг байсан боловч олонхийн саналын дагуу шийдвэрлэв.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.18 "дунд" = "among ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	(Someone) allotted this job to four students. ("distributed **among** ...")	Энэ ажлыг дөрвөн оюутны дунд хуваажээ.	[illegible]
b	If you learn a foreign language **among** native speakers, you'll probably learn it fast.	Гадаад хэлийг тэр хэлээр ярилцагч хүмүүсийн дунд сурвал хурдан сурах байх.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.19 "ойролцоо" = "near ...; in the neighborhood of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Many children were playing **in** our **neighborhood.**	Манай байшингийн ойролцоо олон хүүхэд тоглож байсан.	[illegible]
b	We live **near** the 'Jukov' Museum.	Манайхан Жуковын музейн ойролцоо амьдардаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.20 Suffix "–уур" = Expressing Local Movement

Below are examples of adverbs that can take this suffix, thus forming a postposition with the genitive CS. "дээгүүр/ доогуур" can follow the word stem directly (–ø suffix; **ex.b**). Compare with pages 224-225 to understand the origin of this suffix.

a	The Tuul river flows **on this side of** 'Bogd' Mountain. (as seen from UB)	Туул гол Богд уулын наагуур урсдаг.	[illegible]
b	Did you search for your key **under** the table?	Чи түлхүүрээ ширээний доогуур эрсэн үү? (ширээн доогуур)	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.21 "тухай" = "about ..."

In colloquial language, "энэ/ тэр" (word stems without genitive CS) are also used in front of "тухай" (**ex. d-e**), but this is not allowed when these words refer to people.

a	I am very interested in books **about** Mongolia.	Би монголын тухай ном их сонирхдог.	[illegible]
b	May I introduce myself briefly to you? ("May I have you briefly know **about** myself?")	Би танд өөрийнхөө тухай товч танилцуулж болох уу?	[illegible]

c	He is a person who mis-judges me. ("...with a wrong understanding **about** me.")	Тэр миний тухай буруу ойлголттой хүн юм.	[illegible]
d	I heard **about** this from him.	Би үүний (энэ) тухай түүнээс сонссон.	[illegible]
e	I have been thinking **about** that.	Би түүний (тэр) тухай бодож байгаа.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.22 "талаар" = "**on ...; with regard to ...**"

a	I don't know anything **on (the subject of)** Buddhism.	Би Бурханы шашны талаар юу ч мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]
b	I have a few books **on** Mongolian history.	Надад монголын түүхийн талаар нилээд хэдэн ном бий.	[illegible]
c	Are there other ideas **with regard to** this problem?	Энэ асуудлын талаар өөр санал байна уу?	[illegible]
d	He talks repeatedly **about** his country.	Тэр эх орныхоо талаар олонтоо яриадаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.23 "гадна" = "**out(side) of ...**"

a	Those two were standing **outside** the door talking for a long time.	Тэр хоёр хаалганы гадна удаан ярьж зогсов.	[illegible]
b	My son is playing **outside** the house.	Манай хүү байшингийн гадна тоглож байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.24 "хойно" = "**north of ...; after ...**"

Similar to "~ын дараа", but "хойно" needs some previous action (*) to relate to, when used with a temporal meaning.

a	Our house is situated **north of** the university.	Манай байр их сургуулийн хойно байдаг.	[illegible]
b	I will leave ten hours **after** he does*.	Би түүнээс* арван цагийн хойно явна.	[illegible]
c	This morning, my son got up half an hour **after** I did*.	Өнөө өглөө манай хүү надаас* хагас цагийн хойно боссон.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.25 "өмнө" = "**in front of ...; before ...**"

When "~ын өмнө" has a temporal meaning, it expresses '**immediately before**' (**ex. b**). Compare with "~аас өмнө" (p.294): цагийн өмнө = "... hours ago"; цагаас өмнө = "before... o'clock"

a	There is a big goal **in front of** us.	Бидний өмнө том зорилт байна.	[illegible]
b	I didn't see my husband **before** the meeting.	Би нөхрийгөө хурлын өмнө харсангүй.	[illegible]
c	I came four hours **ago**.	Би дөрвөн цагийн өмнө ирсэн.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.26 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	**Similar to** many Mongolians, he grew up near livestock.	Тэр олон монгол хүний адил малын дэргэд өссөн.	[illegible]
b	**Like** my friends, I believe that there is a true God.	Би найз нарынхаа адил жинхэнэ Бурхан байдаг гэдэгт итгэдэг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.3 POSTPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE-LOCATIVE CS

2.1.3.3.1 "ойр" = "close to ...; near ..."

Always follows after dative-locative.

a	Is your house **close to** the department store?	Танай байшин их дэлгүүрт ойр байдаг уу?	[illegible]
b	Which 'sum' is the **closest to** Ulaanbaatar?	Улаанбаатарт хамгийн ойр сум ямар сум бэ?	[illegible]

2.1.3.4 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ABLATIVE CS

2.1.3.4.1 "бусад" = "other than ...; except ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	All people **except** you have already come.	Танаас бусад бүх хүн ирчихээд байна.	[illegible]
b	We work everyday **except** Sunday.	Ням гаригаас бусад бүх өдөр бид ажилладаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.2 "өөр" = "besides ...; other than ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	I have other money **besides** tögrögs.	Надад төгрөгнөөс өөр мөнгө байгаа.	[illegible]
b	We don't have a method **other than** this one.	Бидэнд үүнээс өөр арга байхгүй.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.3 "илүү" = "more than ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	He speaks Mongolian better than I. ("...**more** (good) **than** I.")	Тэр монголоор надаас илүү (сайн) ярьдаг.	[illegible]
b	Not **more than** 30 people fit into this hall.	Энэ танхимд 30-аас илүү хүн багтахгүй.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.4 "хол" = "far from ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	He lived **far from** his family for many years	Тэр гэр бүлээсээ хол олон жил амь дарсан.	[illegible]
b	The resort 'Terelj' is situated not **far from** Ulaanbaatar.	"Тэрэлж" амралтын газар Улаанбаатараас холгүй оршдог.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.5 Suffix "-(г) ш" = Expressing Direction

Here are examples of adverbs taking this suffix with the ablative CS.

a	**Since** the war, I haven't seen him at all. ("**After** the war...")	Дайнаас хойш би түүнтэй ердөө уулзаагүй.	[illegible]
b	The city 'Zuunmod' is 30 km **south of** Ulaanbaatar. ("...is with a distance of 30 km south of UB.")	Зуун мод хот Улаанбаатараас урагшаа 30 км зайтай.	[illegible]
c	I didn't go **out of** my home for several days.	Би хэдэн өдөр гэрээсээ гадагш яваагүй.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.6 "гадна" = "apart from ..."

a	**Apart from** him, several people speak Mongolian.	Түүнээс гадна хэд хэдэн хүн монголоор ярьдаг.	[illegible]
b	**Apart from** me, three people will go.	Надаас гадна гурван хүн явна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.7 "хойно" = "after ..."

Note the "-аас хойш", which is more widely used.

a	I met him once **after** the war.	Дайнаас хойно би түүнтэй нэг удаа уулзсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.8 "өмнө" = "before ..."

When used with the ablative CS, the **time span** referred to is **longer** than when it's used with genitive CS (compare with -ын өмнө: p. 292).

a	Please call me **before** 10 p.m.	Та оройн арван цагаас өмнө над руу утсаар яриарай.	[illegible]
b	Who was teaching you **before** him? ("Who did you have teach you **before** him?")	Та түүнээс өмнө ямар хүнээр хичээл заалгаж байсан бэ?	[illegible]
c	I came **before** 4 o'clock.	Би дөрвөн цагаас өмнө ирсэн.	[illegible]

2.1.3.5 POSTPOSITIONS WITH COMITATIVE CS

2.1.3.5.1 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	He desires to become an athlete **like** his older brother.	Тэр ахтайгаа адил тамирчин болохыг хүсдэг.	[illegible]
b	Human beings have been searching for intelligent beings **like** themselves.	Хүн төрөлхтөн өөртэй-гөө адил ухаантныг эрсээр байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6 POSTPOSITIONS WITH NDS's

Some of the postpositions that usually take genitive or zero-suffix, could also be linked to the nominal element with an NDS. Then they form a conjunction (see pages 308-318) and as such could appear with a RS (see p. 296: last two postpositions).

2.1.3.6.1 "хүртэл" = "until ..."

When "хүртэл" follows an NDS, the *noun* is dropped (see parentheses).

a	Let me wait here **until** you come. ("...until *the time* of your coming.")	Чамайг ирэх (цаг) хүртэл би энд хүлээ байя.	[illegible]
b	Please read everything **up to** the *page/lesson* the teacher taught.	Багшийн заасан (хуу-дас, хичээл) хүртэл нэгбүрчлэн уншаарай.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.2 "бүр/болгон" = "every time ...; each time ..."

*Notice that, in English, the noun (here '*time*') can't be dropped like in Mongolian.

a	**Every** *time* * I go to a resort, I like it very much. ("...it seems to me very nice.")	Намайг амралтын газар очих бүр/болгон их сайхан санагддаг.	[illegible]
b	**Each** *time* * I visited his home, he gave me a gift.	Би тэднийд очих бүр/болгон тэр надад бэлэг өгдөг байсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.3 "тутам" = "each ..."

* see explanation above

a	**Each** *time* he talks about this, I understand better that I'm in the wrong.	Түүнийг энэ тухай ярих тутам би буруутай гэдгээ улам илүү ойлгодог.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.4 "ёсоор" = "the way ...; according to ..."

a	Everything turned out **the way** you said it would.	Бүх юм чиний хэлсэн ёсоор боллоо.	[illegible]
b	Everything is being carried out **the way** it was planned.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсөн ёсоор явагдаж байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.5 "мэт" = "like ..."

a	The word of a bad person is **like** the bite of a poisonous snake.	Муу хүний үг хорт могой хатгах мэт	[illegible]
b	The word of a good person is **like** the warmth of the bright sun.	Сайн хүний үг хүрц наран ээх мэт	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.6 "шиг" = "like ..."

Note the new expression "~х шиг бол~" which is used in colloquial language (**ex. b-c!**).

a	(I) heard about this and almost fainted. ("... became **like** [someone] losing his consciousness")	Энэ тухай сонсоод ухаан алдах шиг болов.	[illegible]
b	She learned Mongolian **excellently**.	Тэр монгол хэлийг сурах шиг болсон.	[illegible]
c	Christiane is **the best at** baking cakes.	Христиана бялуур хийх шиг болдог.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.7 "тухай" = "about ..."

a	One of my friends is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх тухай бодож байгаа.	[illegible]
b	I wrote a travelogue **about** my traveling in the countryside.	Би хөдөө явсан тухайгаа тэмдэглэл бичсэн.	[illegible]

2.1.3.6.8 "талаар" = "on ...; with regard to ..."

a	One of my friends is busy organizing his journey to Mongolia. ("...is occupied **in regard to** his coming..")	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх талаар хөөцөлдөж байгаа.	[illegible]
b	Please talk **about** your travels in the countryside.	Та хөдөө явсан талаараа яриач.	[illegible]

2.2 CONJUNCTIONS

The conjunctions (Latin 'coniungere' = 'to join', 'to link', 'to connect') are words which **connect parts of a sentence or whole sentences**. Besides their connecting function, they can **reveal the relationship** between the elements they connect. Their position in the sentence is fixed.
In this book, we will **follow a syntactic classification,** but refer to other ways of classifying (e.g. semantic, morphological) where appropriate.

2.2.1 Coordinating Conjunctions

The coordinating conjunctions (Latin 'coordinare' = 'to add') **connect two equally important parts of speech or sentences.** None of the two parts is subordinated to the other. The parts may **logically demand** one another, but that's not subordination.

In this chapter, we will always **refer** to the following **three kinds of connections**:
• conjunctions which connect two **non-predicate parts** (e.g. subjects, objects)
• conjunctions which connect two **predicate parts** (gives a compound sentence)
• conjunctions which connect two **sentences or paragraphs**.

Examples in English:

• Conjunctions which connect two non-predicate parts:
2 subjects: *John* **and** *Frank* talk with each other.
2 objects: He knows **neither** *you* **nor** *me*.
2 attributes: I'll give you a *red* **and** a *blue* pencil.
2 adverbials: I **not only** play football *in summer*, **but also** *in winter*.

• Conjunctions which connect two predicate parts (= compound sentence):
Maggy *is sleeping*, **and** her mother *is cooking*.
The alarm clock *rings*, **but** he *doesn't hear* it.

• Conjunctions which connect two sentences:
You're far too late. **But** I hope you have a reason for it.
Unfortunately, he couldn't sing. **Nevertheless,** it was a nice concert.
Excuse me for not being able to come yesterday. I had a cold. **Besides,** we had visitors.

In Mongolian there is often no big difference between two predicate parts and two sentences. Whether there is a comma or a period, it doesn't matter a lot. Strictly grammatically speaking, there should be a period before a Proword-conjunction (see 2.2.3).

☞Attention:
Some of the Mongolian conjunctions don't give a conjunction in the English translation. Compare with the following parts in this book:
• cVDS's: −аа/д[4],−ч/−ж, −н (see pages 157-160).
• Cardinal numerals (see page 237).

2.2.1.1 OVERVIEW OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

We could present a twofold classification in **original and derived** conjunctions, but for the following reasons we don't do that: conjunctions that look superficially like original conjunctions (e.g. "бөгөөд", "болон", etc.) would have to be strictly classified as 'derived' because of their origin of "verb + VDS". So, it's difficult to draw proper lines between 'original' and 'derived'. To us, it seemed more important that the following conjunctions **serve as conjunctions today**:

1	... ба ...	.... [illegible]	... and ...
2	... бөгөөд ... (болоод/ хийгээд/ агаад)	.... [illegible] .... ([illegible] • [illegible] • [illegible])	... and ... (The words in parentheses are rarely used and specialized)
3	...-гүй	.... [illegible]	... and ... (whether ... or ...)
4	... болон ...	.... [illegible]	... as well as ...
5	... ч, ...ч ...	.... [illegible] • .... [illegible]	(although) both, ... and ...
6	..., (мөн) түүнчлэн ...	.... • ([illegible]) [illegible]	... as well as (also) ...
7	... , харин ...	.... • [illegible]	... , but ...
8	... , гэвч ...	.... • [illegible]	... , but ... ; ..., still, ...
9	...(зөвхөн) ...төдийгүй, мөн...	[illegible] .... ([illegible]) • [illegible] •	... not (only)... , but also...
10	...төдий биш, харин (бас)	[illegible] • [illegible] ([illegible])	... not (only)... , but (also)...
11	...-аар барахгүй, мөн ... ...-аар үл барам ...	.... [illegible] • [illegible] .... [illegible] [illegible]	... not (only)... , but also...
12	... буюу... ... юм уу...	.... [illegible] .... [illegible]	.. respectively ..(..or..)
13	... эсвэл (эсхүл)... [... үгүй бол...] [... нэг бол...] [... аль эсвэл...]	- - - [illegible] ([illegible]) .... [.... [illegible] ....] [.... [illegible] ....] [.... [illegible] ....]	... or ... (old form in parentheses) [if not ..., then ...]
14	... эсвэл..., эсвэл ...	.... [illegible] .... • [illegible]	... (n)either ... (n)or ...
15	... байхад, харин ...	.... [illegible] • [illegible]	..., where as ...
16	... байтугай ... (... бүү хэл ...) (... биттий хэл ...)	.... [illegible] .... (.... [illegible] ....) (.... [illegible] ....)	... let alone ... ... not to mention ...
17	... гэхдээ ...	.... [illegible]	... but ...

2.2.1.2 USAGE OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.1.2.1 "ба" = "and"

- has **adversative** meaning, i.e., the two connected parts exclude each other.
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**)
- almost exclusively used in **written language**
- first part of sentence is not declined (in **ex. c** evident: **ex. b**: "ы" in оюуны = derivational suffix)

a	Scientific research is divided into *basic* **and** *applicable*.	Шинжлэх ухааны судалгааг тулгуур ба хавсарга гэж ангилдаг.	[illegible]
b	The epoch of Genghis Khan's empire plays an important role in the history of the *spiritual* **and** *material* culture of the Mongolians.	Чингис хааны зээнт гүрний үе монголчуудын оюуны ба эдийн соёлын түүхэнд чухал үүрэг гүйцэтгэдэг.	[illegible]
c	Thousands of students study at the *Mongolian State University* **and** *other universities*.	Олон мянган оюутан Монгол Улсын Их Сургууль ба бусад дээд сургуулиудад сурдаг.	[illegible]

☞ Attention! This is wrong:

My father is *nice* **and** *wise*.	Манай аав сайхан зантай ба ухаалаг.	- Манай аав бол сайхан зантай, ухаалаг хүн.
Baatar **and** *Dorj* must go now.	Баатар ба Дорж одоо явах ёстой.	- Баатар, Дорж хоёр одоо явах ёстой.

2.2.1.2.2 "бөгөөд" = "and"

- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects **predicate parts** which demand each other **logically** (***verb*** in front of the conjunction demands an ***NDS*** (**ex. a-c**)
- used almost exclusively in **official or literary** language
- derived from the old auxiliary verb "bü–" + cVDS "–аад"

a	My friend *studies* in Germany **and** will come soon.	Миний найз Германд сурч байгаа бөгөөд удахгүй ирнэ.	[illegible]
b	When I came to Mongolia for the first time, it *was* interesting **and** there were many things (I) didn't understand.	Анх Монголд ирэхэд сонин байсан бөгөөд ойлгомжгүй зүйл их байсан.	[illegible]
c	I *will return* to my homeland in 1996 **and** it isn't clear when I will come back.	Би 1996 онд нутагтаа харих бөгөөд хэзээ буцаж ирэх нь тодорхойгүй байна.	[illegible]
d	I love her **and** always think of her.	Би түүнд хайртай бөгөөд үргэлж түүнийг боддог.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.3 "~гүй" = "and; whether ... or"

- usually used with *opposite pairs* (**ex. a-d**)
- connects **non-predicate parts** (**ex. a-d**), but also **predicate parts** (**ex. e-f**)

a	We all, *young* **and** *old*, love this song.	Энэ дуунд манайхан хөг-шин залуугүй дуртай.	[illegible]
b	I worked *day* **and** *night*.	Би өдөр шөнөгүй ажилласан.	[illegible]
c	High trees grew on both sides of this mountain. (*"behind* **and** *in front of"*)	Уулын ар өвөргүй өндөр өндөр мод ургажээ.	[illegible]
d	Dulmaa reads all of the time. ("... *morning* **and** *evening*")	Дулмаа бол өглөө үдэш-гүй ном уншиж суудаг.	[illegible]
e	I'll surely come, **whether** you *invite* me **or** *not*.	Би таныг урьсан уриагүй заавал ирнэ.	[illegible]
f	I will live in Mongolia **whether** I *learn* Mongolian **or** *not*.	Би монгол хэл сурсан сураагүй Монголд амьдарна.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.4 "болон" = "as well as"

- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-e**)
- the first part of the sentence is **not** declined (**ex. a,b,c,e**; **ex. d**:"ын" = derivational suffix, therefore it doesn't drop in the word "дотоод").
- derived from verb "бол~" + cVDS "~н"

a	We received from you *a telegram* **as well as** *the letter of September 5*.	Бид танаас цахилгаан болон таны 9-р сарын 5-нд бичсэн захиаг хүлээн авсан.	[illegible]
b	Mongolians want to strengthen their multilateral relationship with *Germany* **as well as** *with other European countries*.	Монголчууд Герман болон Европын бусад орнуудтай олон талын харилцаагаа бэхжүүлэхийг хүсч байна.	[illegible]
c	He speaks Russian **and also** Chinese well.	Тэр орос болон хятад хэлээр сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible]
d	Many *national* **as well as** *foreign* representatives hold speeches in this meeting.	Энэ хуралд дотоодын болон гадаадын олон төлөөлөгч үг хэлэв.	[illegible]
e	Our guests went to the *Central Museum* **as well as** *to the department store*.	Манай зочид Төв Музей болон их дэлгүүрт очсон.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.5 "ч, ...ч ..." = "both, ... and ...; (although ... and ...)"

- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**: note the different translation; verb needs an NDS)
- **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a,c and d** evident)
- compare with the meaning of the **particle** "ч" (pages 346-348)

a	He knows **both** *you* **and** *me* well.	Тэр мэдэхгүй ч, танд ч сайн мэдэнэ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	My mother just bought **both** *bread* **and** *cake* at the market.	Ээж минь сая захаас талх ч, бялуу ч авсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	He speaks well in **both** *Russian* **and** *Chinese*.	Тэр орсоор ч, хятадаар ч сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
d	You can meet these kinds of people in **both** *Mongolia* **and** *Germany*.	Та иймэрхүү хүмүүстэй Монголд ч, Германд ч тааралдаж болно.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
e	(Although) I talked with him in **both** *Mongolian* **and** *English*, he didn't understand anything.	Би түүнтэй монголоор ярьсан ч, англиар ярьсан ч тэр юу ч ойлгоогүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.1.2.6 "(мөн) түүнчлэн" = "and also"

- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts***
- the first part of the sentence is **not** declined (in **ex. b** evident)

a	My father teaches *French* **and also** *some other languages* at a school.	Манай аав сургуульд франц хэл, (мөн) түүнчлэн бусад зарим хэл заадаг.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	He came after having traveled *through Germany* **and also** *through some other countries*. (*"He traveled ... and then came."*)	Тэр Герман, (мөн) түүнчлэн өөр хэд хэдэн орноор аялаад ирлээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.1.2.7 "харин" = "but"

- has a **concessive** meaning (literal translation 'returning')
- very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
- similar to "гэвч" (see page 302), but not so strong in its concessive meaning
- when ***non-predicate parts*** are connected, the negative particle "биш" is needed (**ex. e-g**) and **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. f** evident)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, харин хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо тааруухан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	My friend *speaks* Mongolian well, **but** he *can't write* a single word.	Манай найз монголоор сайн ярьдаг, харин нэг ч үг бичиж чадахгүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

c	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap*.	Машин Монголд их үнэтэй, харин Германд харьцангуй хямд байдаг.	[illegible]
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна. Харин хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	[illegible]
e	At the shop, he bought **no** *shirt*, **but** he did buy *boots*.	Тэр дэлгүүрээс цамц биш, харин гутал авсан.	[illegible]
f	Not with the *duration of this contract*, **but** with *the payment conditions* we agree.	Бид энэ гэрээний хугацааг биш, харин төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна.	[illegible]
g	Not *Mongolians*, **but** *Chinese* can do this.	Үүнийг монгол хүн биш, харин хятад хүн хийж чадна.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.8 "гэвч" = "but; still"

- has a **concessive** meaning
- very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
- very similar to "харин" (see above), гэхдээ (p. 307) and the sVDS "−вч" (p. 162-163).

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, гэвч хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо тааруухан.	[illegible]
b	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap*.	Машин Монголд их үнэтэй, гэвч Германд харьцангуй хямд байдаг.	[illegible]
c	He has offended me many times. **Still**, I invited him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон, гэвч би түүнийг урьсан.	[illegible]
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна. Гэвч хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.9 "(зөвхөн) ... төдийгүй, мөн" = "not (only), but also"

- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not only that much, also')
- "зөвхөн" and "мөн" could be omitted; the main word is "төдийгүй"
- mainly connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**; an NDS is needed)
- **both** parts of sentence are declined (in **ex. b** evident)
- similar to next conjunction (p. 303); but here, the first statement is satisfactory, the second statement only **complements** the first one.

a	**Not only** did I receive a *telegram* from you, **but also** *a letter*.	Бид танаас (зөвхөн) цахилгаан төдийгүй, мөн захиа хүлээн авсан.	[illegible]

b	**Not only** do we disagree with *the payment conditions* of this contract, **but also** with *the duration*.	Бид энэ гэрээний (зөвхөн) төлбөрийн нөхцлийг тодийгүй, мөн хугацаанд зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	[illegible]
c	In my opinion, in order to study a foreign language, one has to **not only** devote *one's working time*, **but also** *one's free time*.	Миний бодлоор бол, гадаад хэлийг сурахын тулд (зөвхөн) ажлын цагаа тодийгүй, мөн чөлөөт цагаа зориулах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
d	**Not only** *did* he *pay* the *costs of his meal* **but also** *ours*.	Тэр (зөвхөн) өөрийн хоолны мөнгө тодий-гүй, мөн биднийхийг төлсөн юм.	[illegible]
e	**Not only** *did* he *teach* me many things, **but** he **also** introduced me to many people.	Тэр надад их зүйл зааж өгсөн тодийгүй, мөн олон хүнтэй танилцуулсан.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.10 "тодий биш, (харин)" = "not only ... , but"

- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not so much, but')
- always connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**)
- similar to previous conjunction (p. 302), but here, the first statement **is not satisfactory** and has to be complemented.
- both parts of the sentence are declined (evident in **ex. c**)

a	When you go by train to Moscow, you **not only** need *one or two days*, **but** *quite many*.	Галт тэргээр Москва ороход нэг хоёр тодий биш, (харин) нилээд хэд хоног хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
b	People must **not only** live *in peace*, **but also** *well*.	Хүмүүс амар тайван тодий биш, (харин) сайн сайхан амьдрах ёстой.	[illegible]
c	In order to understand the Mongolians well, you have to live **not only** *in Ulaanbaatar*, **but also** *in the countryside*.	Та монголчуудыг сайн ойлгохын тулд зөвхөн Улаанбаатарт тодий биш, харин орон нутагт амьдрах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.11 "-аар барахгүй, (мөн) ...аар үл барам" = "not only ..., no, also"

- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not ending by ..., also')
- similar to тодийгүй, мөн (p. 302) the second statement complements the first one
- always connects ***predicate parts*** (demanding an NDS)
- compare with the very similar conjunction "-аар үл барам" (**x. e-f**), which can also connect ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. e**)

a	He came to Mongolia and **not only** did he *learn* Mongolian well, he **also** *is writing* a Mongolian language textbook.	Тэр Монголд ирээд монгол хэл сайн сурс-наар барахгүй, (мөн) монгол хэлний сурах бичиг зохиож байна.	[illegible]

b	**Not only** did he *tell* me *a lie*, he *has* **also** *stolen* my things.	Тэр надад худлаа хэлснээр барахгүй, (мөн) миний юмыг хулгайлчихжээ.	[illegible]
c	**Not only** *did* he *get to know* another woman, he **also** *married* her.	Тэр өөр хүүхэнтэй танилцсанаар барахгүй, (мөн) түүнтэй суусан.	[illegible]
d	**Not only** will that foreigner *live* in the countryside, he'll **also** *stay* in a Mongolian yurt.	Тэр гадаадын хүн хөдөө амьдрахаар барахгүй, монгол гэрт сууна.	[illegible]
e	You can export wool abroad and buy **not only** *technical machines*, **but even** *whole factories*.	Ноосыг гадаадад гаргаж машин техникээр үл барам бүхэл үйлдвэр ч худалдан авч болно.	[illegible]
f	**Not only** do I always *call* her, I **also** *meet* her from time to time.	Би түүнтэй үргэлж утсаар яриадгаар үл барам хааяа уулздаг.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.12 "буюу; юм уу" = "respectively; or"

- had originally an **alternative** meaning, thus, the two connected elements don't exclude each other; they are one **and the same thing**, only expressed differently (**ex. a-c**)
- today most Mongolians use this conjunction almost like "эсвэл" which has an **adversative** meaning (**ex. d-g**)
- generally it could be said, that "буюу" is mainly used for ***non-predicate parts*** and "эсвэл" mainly for ***predicate parts***; moreover, "буюу" is **not used in interrogative sentences**
- sometimes **both** parts of the sentence are declined, sometimes only one (in **ex. g**, "эсвэл" demands a declension of both parts)
- "юм уу" is a colloquial form of "буюу" (**ex. h**)

a	The plane ticket from Ulaanbaatar to Beijing costs *80'000 tögrögs*, **respectively** *USD 150*.	Улаанбаатараас Бээжин орох онгоцны тасалбар 80.000 төгрөг буюу 150 ам. долларын үнэтэй.	[illegible]
b	Sand makes out an area of *5,3 %*, **respectively** *more than 7 million km²* of the dry land of our planet.	Манай гаригийн хуурай газрын 5,3 хувь буюу 7 сая гаруй км² дэрвэлжин километр талбайг элс эзэлдэг.	[illegible]
c	*The year of the White Horse of the sexage–nary cycle*, **resp.** *1990*, has become a very special year in regards to the destiny of the Mongolians.	*XVII* жарны цагаан морин жил буюу 1990 он монголчуудын хувь заяанд нэн онцгой жил боллоо.	[illegible]

d	I'd like to talk with you *in English* **or** *German*.	Би тантай англиар буюу (эсвэл) германаар ярьмаар байна.	[illegible]
e	I need a *two* **or** *three* room flat.	Надад хоер буюу (эсвэл) гурван өрөө байр хэрэгтэй байна.	[illegible]
f	You can give the answer to this *orally* **or** *in written*.	Та үүний хариуг амаар буюу (эсвэл) бичгээр өгч болно.	[illegible]
g	He'll come *on Friday* **or** *on Saturday*.	Тэр Баасан гариг(т) буюу (эсвэл) Бямба гариг(т) ирнэ.	[illegible]
h	Next year, I'd like to go and see *the Khovd* **or** *the Uvs Aimag*.	Би дараа жил Ховдоо юм уу (эсвэл) Увс аймаг(т) очиж үзмээр байна.	[illegible]

☞ Attention! wrong:

a	Do you believe *him* **or** *me*?	Чи түүнд буюу надад итгэж байна уу?	→ Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл надад итгэж байна уу?
b	When will you fly? *Tomorrow* **or** *the day after*?	Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? Маргааш буюу нөгөөдөр?	→ Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? Маргааш уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр үү?

2.2.1.2.13 "эсвэл; эсхүл" = "or; if not, then"

- read the remarks to буюу on page 304! Literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do'
- often connects ***interrogative sentences (predicate parts)*** (**ex. a-c**)
- in sentences with ***non-predicate parts***, "буюу" could also be used (**ex. d**)
- "эсхүл" is the old form; not widely used
- both parts of the sentence are declined(in **ex. g**, i evident)
- "эсвэл" can also appear together with "буюу" or "юм уу" (**ex. e-f**)
- other colloquial versions of "эсвэл" are "үгүй бол, нэг бол, аль эсвэл" (**ex. g-i**)

a	Do you believe him **or** not?	Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл үгүй юу?	[illegible]
b	What kind of apples do you like? *Red* **or** *green* (ones)?	Та ямар алимд дуртай вэ? Улаанд уу эсвэл ногоонд уу?	[illegible]
c	Do you like *red* (apples) **or** (do you like) *green* apples?	Та улаан алимд дуртай юу, эсвэл ногоон алимд дуртай юу?	[illegible]
d	I'll go *tomorrow* **or** *the day after*.	Би маргааш эсвэл (буюу) нөгөөдөр явна.	[illegible]
e	You can *talk* to me by this phone number or *contact* me through my friend Dorj.	Та надтай энэ утсаар ярих буюу эсвэл миний найз Доржоор дамжуулан харьцаж болно.	[illegible]
f	I'll go *tomorrow* **or else** *the day after*.	Би маргааш юм уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр явна.	[illegible]
g	I'll marry Baatar. **If not, then** Dorj.	Би Баатартай үгүй бол Доржтой гэрлэнэ.	[illegible]
h	I'll go today **or else** tomorrow.	Би өнөөдөр нэг бол маргааш явна.	[illegible]

i	He'll come by train. **If not, then** by plane.	Тэр галт тэргэр аль эсвэл онгоцоор ирнэ.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.14 "эсвэл ... эсвэл" = "either ... or"

- has an **adversative** meaning (literal translation: twice 'if [one] doesn't do')
- connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** which are self-contained and therefore appear with a ***TTS*** (same tense) (**ex. d-e**)
- with common subject, the subject stands before the "эсвэл" (**ex. a, e**)
- **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a-c** evident)

a	He is **either** *at his work* **or** *at home*.	Тэр эсвэл ажил дээрээ, эсвэл гэрээ бий.	[illegible]
b	I intend to go to my homeland next year, **either** *in June* **or** *in September*.	Би дараа жил эсвэл 6-р сард, эсвэл 9-р сард нутагтаа буцах санаатай.	[illegible]
c	We two can talk **either** *in English* **or** *in German*.	Бид хоёр эсвэл англиар, эсвэл германаар ярьж болох юм.	[illegible]
d	**Either** you *marry* me **or** I *die*.	Эсвэл чи надтай гэрлэнэ, эсвэл би үхнэ.	[illegible]
e	**Either** he *was ill* **or** he *told a lie*.	Тэр эсвэл өвджээ, эсвэл худлаа ярьжээ.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.15 "байхад, харин" = "whereas"

- has an **additive** meaning; creates a **comparison** between two actions or things; general statements, therefore the NDS"-даг" (p. 144) is mainly used
- connects ***predicate parts*** (verb demands an **NDS**)

a	Some people like smoking, **whereas** others don't like it.	Зарим хүмүүс тамхи татах дуртай байхад, харин зарим нь дургүй.	[illegible]
b	The Germans *are good at football*, **whereas** the Mongolians *are good at wrestling*.	Германчууд хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо сайн байхад, харин Монголчууд бөх барилдахдаа сайн.	[illegible]
c	In Mongolia, meat *is very cheap*, **whereas** in Europe *it's very expensive*.	Монголд мах маш хямд байхад, харин Европт маш үнэтэй.	[illegible]
d	In England, *it rains all the time*, **whereas** in Mongolia, *it only rains in summer*.	Англид үргэлж бороо ордог байхад, харин Монголд зөвхөн зуны цагт бороо ордог.	[illegible]
e	The Chinese *eat rice* every day, **whereas** the Germans *eat* a lot of *bread*.	Хятад хүмүүс өдөр бүр цагаан будаа иддэг байхад, харин Герман хүмүүс талх их иддэг.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.16 "байтугай" = "let alone; not to mention"

- connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**) as well as ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. c-d**)
- literal translation: 'may it be' (see page 183)
- only the second part of the sentence is declined (evident in **ex. c**)
- the CbP "нь" has the function of a subject marker (see p. 372, 395)
- **similar expressions** in colloquial language: "биттгий хэл"/"бүү хэл"(**ex. e-f**)

a	Bat didn't meet the boss, **let alone** talked to him.	Бат даргатай ярих (нь) байтугай уулзаагүй байна.	[illegible]
b	Does the storm calm down? **No way** does it calm down, it even increases!	Шуурга намдаж байна уу? Намдах нь байтугай ширүүсч байна.	[illegible]
c	Post is delivered by plane to the 'sum' centres, **not to mention** the 'aimag' centres.	Шууданг аймгийн төв байтугай сумын төв онгоцоор хүргэдэг.	[illegible]
d	I drink no beer, **let alone** alcohol.	Би архи байтугай пиво уудаггүй.	[illegible]
e	I can barely make life's ends meet, **let alone** give you money.	Би танд мөнгө өгөх (нь) биттгий хэл өөрөө яая гэж байна.	[illegible]
f	He even went to America, **not to mention** Germany.	Тэр Германд бүү хэл Америкт очсон.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.17 "гэхдээ" = "but"

- connects ***predicate parts***
- very similar to гэвч (compare with page 302)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *doesn't take part* in competitions.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, гэхдээ тэмцээнд ордоггүй.	[illegible]
b	He *has offended* me many times, **but** I *don't think* badly about him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон, гэхдээ би муу юм боддоггүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2 Subordinating Conjunctions

The subordinating conjunctions (Latin 'subordinare' = 'to subordinate') **connect a main clause with a subordinate clause.** The subordinate clause takes the **function of a part of the sentence** (e.g. subject clause, predicate clause, object clause, attribute clause, adverbial clause). Readers need to **pay special attention to the position** of the conjunction in the sentence as it is very different from English (see literal translation in the examples below).

Examples in English:

a) I knew ***that*** *he couldn't come.* (Main clause and *object clause)*
literal: *He come can not* ***that*** / I knew.

b) **Because** *he was ill,* the meeting didn't take place. (Main clause and *adverbial clause)*
literal: *He sickness with* **because** / meeting became not.

c) I will be here, ***until*** *I have finished my work.* (Main clause and *adverbial clause)*
literal: I *work of mine finish* ***until*** / here be will.

In **Part IV** (page 359ff), we will talk in more detail about main and subordinate clauses, their functions, positions and peculiarities.

2.2.2.1 OVERVIEW OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Please read the explanation on page 297.
With this list, our main concern was to look at those words or analytical constructions that **serve as conjunctions today**. We'll not talk again about the **sVDS's** in general (page 161ff), but only consider those **sVDS's and postpositions that appear in an analytical construction**.

	Cyrillic	Classical	English
1	... гэ~	.... [illegible]	that
2	... ~г гэж	.... [illegible]	so that
3	... эсэх	.... [illegible]	whether
4	... уу, үгүй юу гэдэг	.... [illegible]	whether ... or not
5	... юм шиг л	.... [illegible]	as if ...
6	... учир/...учраас	.... [illegible] , ... [illegible]	because ... Since ...
7	... тул	.... [illegible]	because ...
8	... ~аас болж	.... [illegible]	because ... due to ...
9	... ~хгүй + –(г)ээр	.... [illegible]	without ...– ing ...
10	... ~х гэж	.... [illegible]	(in order) to ...
11	... ~х + –ын тулд	.... [illegible]	(in order) to ...
12	... ~х + –ын өмнө	.... [illegible]	before ...
13	... ~сан + –ы дараа	.... [illegible]	after ...
14	... ~сан + –ы дагуу	.... [illegible]	the way ... according to ...
15	... ~сан + –аас хойш	.... [illegible]	since ... after ...
16	... ~х хүртэл	.... [illegible]	until ...
17	... байх үед ... ~х + д ---> –хад	.... [illegible] .... [illegible]	(at the time) when ...
18	... ~х бүрд ... ~х болгонд	.... [illegible] .... [illegible]	each time ... every time ...
19	... ~х + –тай зэрэг	.... [illegible]	the moment ... as soon as ...
20	... ~(ж бай)х хооронд	.... ([illegible]) [illegible]	while ...; before ...
21	... ~х завсар ... ~х зуур	.... [illegible] .... [illegible]	in between ... while ...
22	(хэрэв)... –бал	([illegible]).... [illegible]	if ...
23	(хэрэв)... ~х тохиолдолд	([illegible]) .... [illegible]	provided that ... in case that ...
24	(хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд	([illegible]) .... [illegible]	under the condition that ... provided that ...
25	... хэдийгээр ... боловч	[illegible] .... [illegible]	although ...
26	... ~сан + –аар	.... [illegible]	the way ... / as ...

Page 311: "... болохоор"; Page 318: "... –х/–сан тухай/ талаар" *(added in 2nd edition)*

2.2.2.2 USAGE OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.2.2.1 "гэ-" = "that"

- introduces **object clauses** or **attribute clauses** (**ex. d, i**)
- the English conjunction 'that' is expressed with the conjunction verb "гэ-"
- in **indirect speech**, usually "гэж" as a fixed form is used (**ex. a-b**)
- in **direct speech,** the conjunction "гэж" is used besides the quotation marks, because the verb has the original meaning 'to say', and therefore, the conjunction isn't omitted even if the 'that' is dropped in English (**ex.c**)
- if 'that' in English connects a subordinate clause with a main clause, the conjunction verb needs an **NDS** that can be declined; usually it is the NDS "–даг", thus forming "гэдэг" (**ex. d-i**)
- notice how **second hand information** is passed on to others (**ex. j-l**)

a	Dorj told me, **that** he would come tomorrow from the countryside.	Дорж маргааш хөдөөнөөс ирнэ гэж надад хэлсэн.	[illegible]
b	I thought, **that** he might come to my home.	Түүнийг манай гэрт ирэх байх гэж би бодсон.	[illegible]
c	Someone shouted, "Help!"	«Туслаарай» гэж хэн нэгэн хүн хашгирсан.	[illegible]
d	What's the reason **that** he can't come?	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдгийн учир юу вэ?	[illegible]
e	I don't doubt **that** he can't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдэг би эргэлзэхгүй байна.	[illegible]
f	I knew **that** he couldn't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг би мэдэж байсан.	[illegible]
g	Everything depends **on whether** he can come or not.	Тэр ирж чадах уу, үгүй юу гэдгээс бүх юм шалтгаална.	[illegible]
h	You have to get to know people **not by** what they say, **but by** what they do.	Хүнийг юу ярьж байна гэдгээр биш, юу хийж байна гэдгээр таних хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
i	I agree (**with** the opinion) **that** he can't do this.	Тэр үүнийг хийж чадахгүй гэдэгтэй би санал нэг байна.	[illegible]
j	**I heard that** my friend has met his older brother.	Миний найз ахтайгаа уулзасан гэнэ.	[illegible]
k	I was **told, that** Dorj will come tomorrow.	Дорж маргааш ирнэ гэсэн.	[illegible]
l	I was **told that** Baatar does exercises every morning.	Баатар өдөр тутам биеийн тамир хийдэг гэлээ.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.2 "–г гэж" = "so that"

- introduces **final clauses**
- compare with the meaning of the PTS "–г" (p. 181; *3rd person*) and "–х гэж" (p. 312)

a	The parents gave him the name 'Jargal' (happiness) **so that** *he* might be happy.	Эцэг эх нь түүнийг аз жаргалтай байг гэж түүнд "Жаргал" гэдэг нэр өгчээ.	[illegible]
b	I gave *him* this book, **so that** *he* could study this topic well at home.	Энэ асуудлыг гэртээ сайн судлаг гэж би түүнд энэ номыг өгсөн.	[illegible]
c	The invitations were handed out early, **so that** *the delegates* would come to their meeting in time.	Төлөөлөгчид хуралдаа цагтаа ирэг гэж урилгыг эрт тараасан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.3 "эсэх" = "whether"

- introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
- always takes an ***NDS*** (**ex. a-c**) or another *nominal element* (**ex. d**)
- could be declined, where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he'll come tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэх эсэх тодорхойгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	I don't know exactly, **whether** she has been in Mongolia last year.	Тэр өнгөрсөн жил Монголд байсан эсэхийг би сайн мэдэхгүй байна.	[illegible]
c	I'd like to know **whether** there is such a system in Mongolia.	Би Монголд ийм тогтолцоо байдаг эсэхийг мэдмээр байна.	[illegible]
d	Our father will decide **whether** we must go tomorrow.	Бид нар маргааш явах ёстой эсэхийг аав маань шийднэ.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.4 "... уу, үгүй юу гэдэг" = "whether ... or not"

- introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
- always needs an ***NDS***
- could be declined where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he came yesterday **or not.**	Тэр өчигдөр ирсэн уу, үгүй юу гэдэг тодорхойгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	Please ask him, **whether** he can do this tomorrow **or not**.	Тэр маргааш үүнийг хийж чадах уу, үгүй юу гэдгийг түүнээс асуугаарай.	[illegible]
c	I don't know, **whether** there are such animals in Mongolia **or not**.	Ийм амьтан Монголд байдаг уу, үгүй юу гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.5 "юм шиг л" = "as if"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**

a	You're answering **as if** you don't know this rule.	Та энэ дүрмийг мэддэггүй юм шиг л хариулж байна.	[illegible]
b	He was so nervous **as if** he had never met a woman before.	Тэр урьд нь эмэгтэй хүнтэй уулзаж байгаагүй юм шиг л сандарч байв.	[illegible]
c	Don't behave **as if** you were innocent.	Чиний буруу биш юм шиг л битгий тэг.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.6 "учир ; учраас" = "because; since"

- introduces **causal clauses** (note that in Mongolian, the sentence structure can't be changed as in English. With "учир" or "учраас" the reason is said first, then the statement [main clause] follows. If one wants to write the main clause first, then "Учир нь" is needed.)
- "учир" and "учраас" can be used interchangeably; "учраас" is a little stronger in its meaning
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a, c-g)**
- compare with the conjunctions "учир нь", "тийм учраас" and "яагаад гэвэл", which are used, when the main clause comes first.

a	**Because** I haven't read this book, I cant' tell you anything about it.	Би энэ номыг уншаагүй учир түүний тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй.	[illegible]
b	**Because** I don't have school today, I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй учир номын сан очиж ном уншив.	[illegible]
c	**Since** the tickets were sold out, I didn't see the film.	Билет дууссан учраас би кино үзсэнгүй.	[illegible]
d	We couldn't go to the celebration **because** our babysitter didn't come.	Бидний хүүхдүүдийг хардаг эмэгтэй ирээгүй учраас бид нар баярт явж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
e	**Because** the speaker got ill, the meeting didn't take place.	Илтгэгч өвдсөн учир хурал болсонгүй.	[illegible]
f	I don't want to drink tea now **because** I drank a lot in the morning.	Би өглөө их цай уусан учир одоо цай уумааргүй байна.	[illegible]
g	**Because** my father had a lot of work yesterday, he didn't meet me.	Өчигдөр аав их ажилтай байсан учир надтай уулзаагүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.28 "болохоор" = "because; since" (added on later)

- introduces **causal clauses**
- always takes an ***NDS;*** can be used together with the RS.

a	**Because** I don't know Japanese I talked in Mongolian.	Би япон хэл мэдэхгүй болохоороо монголоор ярьсан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.7 "тул" = "because"

- introduces **causal clauses**
- in function very similar to "учир"; the reason must be mentioned first
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**

a	**Because** my father came from Germany, I don't have much time these days.	Миний эцэг Германаас ирсэн тул би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	We have to go fast, **because** the train comes at 5 o'clock.	Галт тэрэг 5 цагт ирэх тул хурдан явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
c	**Because** I'm married, there's no way that I could live in the dormitory.	Би гэр бүлтэй хүн тул оюутны байранд амьдрах аргагүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.8 "-аас болж" = "due to"

- introduces **causal clauses** with a **negative** shade
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**
- in English, it's common to change the **predicate part** into a noun (smoking, rain...)

a	**Due to** smoking, many people are getting cancer.	Тамхи татдагаас болж олон хүн өмөн үү өвчин тусч байна.	[illegible]
b	We couldn't go **due to** the rain.	Борооорсноос болж бид явж чадсангүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.9 "-хгүй + -(г)ээр" = "without ...-ing"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- for affirmative sentences, compare with тул (p. 312) and the sVDS "-хаар" (p. 166).

a	We're able to finish this work **without** spending a lot of money.	Бид их мөнгө зарцуулахгүйгээр энэ ажлыг дуусгаж чадна.	[illegible]
b	You can't learn a foreign language **without** studying it well every day.	Гадаад хэлийг өдөр бүр үзэхгүйгээр сайн сурч чадахгүй.	[illegible]
c	It's impossible to establish such a big factory **without** enlisting foreign aid.	Гадаадын тусламж авахгүйгээр ийм том үйлдвэр байгуу-лах боломжгүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.10 "-х гэж" = "(in order) to"

- introduces **final clauses**
- similar to the sVDS "-хаар" , which also expresses one **definite purpose**. The action is not continuing. Therefore, this conjunction is not used with verbs expressing a duration.
- only used with **common subjects**
- compare with the conjunction "-ын тулд" (p. 313), which is used for more **general statements** and can also be negated.
- compare with -г гэж (p. 310)

a	He went to America **to** learn English.	Тэр англи хэл сурах гэж Америк явсан.	[illegible]

b	He came many times **in order to** meet you.	Тэр тантай уулзах гэж олон удаа ирсэн.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
c	I went to my friend's home **to** borrow money.	Би мөнгө зээллэх гэж найзындаа очив.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

2.2.2.2.11 "–х + –ын тулд" = "(in order) to"

- introduces **final clauses**
- more general meaning (**ex. a-b**) than the sVDS "–хаар" (p. 166), which expresses a definite purpose. But sometimes the two conjunctions can hardly be differentiated (**ex. c**) In a negative sentence, "–хаар" can't be used even if the purpose is very definite (**ex. d**)
- always takes the future NDS "–х" to serve as a conjunction

a	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to practise it every day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
b	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
c	The construction workers are working day and night **in order to** finish this building before the anniversary.	Барилгачид энэ байшинг ойн өмнө дуусгахын тулд өдөр шөнөгүй ажиллаж байна.(.. дуусгахаар ...)	[illegible] .. [illegible]
d	He worked hard **to keep from** failing the exam. ("**in order** not **to**...")	Тэр шалгантанд унахгүйн тулд шургуу ажилласан.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

2.2.2.2.12 "–х + –ын өмнө" = "before"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the **future NDS** "–х" to serve as a conjunction, although the subordinate clause may be in the past (see **ex. a**)
- with **common subject,** the RS is used

a	**Before** we came to Mongolia, we didn't know Mongolian. ("**Before** our **coming** to Mongolia...")	Бид Монголд ирэхийнхээ өмнө монгол хэл мэддэггүй байсан.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
b	I brush my teeth in the evening **before** I go to sleep. ("**Before** my **sleeping** in the evening")	Би орой унтахынхаа өмнө шүдээ угаадаг.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
c	**Before** I go to the country-side I'll meet her. ("**Before** my **going** to the countryside...")	Би хөдөө явахынхаа өмнө түүнтэй уулзана.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

2.2.2.2.13 "–сан + –ы дараа" = "after"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the past ***NDS*** "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- compare with "–санаас хойш"
- with **common subject,** the RS is used

a	**After** we came to Mongolia, we began to study Mongolian.	Бид Монголд ирсний–хээ дараа монгол хэл сурч эхэлсэн.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

b	**After** I get up in the morning, I do exercises.	Би өглөө боссоныхоо дараа биеийн тамир хийдэг.	[illegible]
c	I'll meet you right **after** I get up tomorrow.	Би маргааш боссоныхоо дараа шууд тантай уулзана.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.14 "–сан + –ы дагуу" = "the way; in accordance with"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- always takes the *past NDS* "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- very similar to "–санаар" (page 318) and "–сан(ы) ёсоор"

a	Everything happened **the way** I had thought it would.	Бүх юм миний бодож байсны дагуу болж өнгөрлөө.	[illegible]
b	(They) did this task **the way** the teacher had said.	Энэ даалгалыг багшийнхаа хэлсний дагуу хийсэн.	[illegible]
c	The construction work finished in **accordance with** the time frame that had been given.	Барилгын ажил төлөвлөсний дагуу хугацаандаа дууссан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.15 "–сан + –аас хойш" = "since; after"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- the action of the subordinate clause indicates the **starting point of the time span**
- always takes the *past NDS* "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- compare with "–саны дараа"(p. 313)

a	**Since** I saw you the last time, many years have passed.	Би тантай хамгийн сүүлд уулзсанаас хойш олон жил өнгөрчээ.	[illegible]
b	I haven't met him **since** we came to Mongolia.	Бид Монголд ирснээсээ хойш түүнтэй уулзаагүй.	[illegible]
c	One year **after** he got to know his wife, he married her.	Тэр эхнэртэйгээ танилцсанаас хойш нэг жилийн дараа гэр бүл болсон.	[illegible]
d	They lived many years in this town **after** the war was over.	Тэд нар дайн дууссанаас хойш олон жил энэ хотод амьдарсан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.16 "–х хүртэл" = "until"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the *future NDS* "–х" to serve as a conjunction
- very similar to the **limiting sVDS** "–тал" (p. 167)

a	I'll be here **until** I have finished my work.	Би ажлаа дуусах хүртэл энд байна.	[illegible]
b	We sat at the train station **until** the sun rose in the morning.	Бид галт тэрэгний буудал дээр өглөө нар мандах хүртэл суув.	[illegible]

c	**Until** you give me something, I won't go.	Чамайг надад юм өгөх хүртэл би явахгүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.17 "байх үед; -х(а)л" = "when; while"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- "-х(а)л" is the short from of "байх үед". Only if the epoch ("үе") needs to be stressed, the conjunction "байх үед" is used (**ex. a-d**)
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used (**ex. d, i-j**) and the subject is in nominative and not in accusative case. In **ex.k** the RS is used on the object ("son"), which is also possible.

a	**While** you were sleeping at home, it was raining outside.	Чамайг гэртээ унтаж байх үед гадаа бороо орж байсан.	[illegible]
b	**When** I was ill, the children didn't do any homework.	Намайг өвчтэй байх үед хүүхдүүд ер гэрийн даалгавар хийгээгүй.	[illegible]
c	**When** Dorj was young, this young woman dated him often.	Доржийг залуу байх үед энэ хүүхэн байнга уулздаг байсан.	[illegible]
d	**When** I was young, I studied English very intensively.	Би залуу байх үедээ англи хэлийг шамдан сурсан.	[illegible]
e	**When** I entered the classroom, the students had (already) come.	Намайг ангид орж ирэхэд оюутнууд ирчихсэн байв.	[illegible]
f	**When** he left his yurt, it was already dark. ("it was having become dark")	Түүнийг гэрээсээ гарахад гадаа харан-хуй болсон байлаа.	[illegible]
g	**When** I got up in the morning, it was already 9 o'clock.	Намайг өглөө босоход аль хэдийн 9 цаг болсон байв.	[illegible]
h	Father came, **when** we were just about to eat.	Биднийг хоолоо идэх гэж байхад аав ирлээ.	[illegible]
i	I got to know my wife, **while** I was a student.	Би оюутан байхдаа эх-нэртэйгээ танилцсан.	[illegible]
j	He will bring that other book, **when** he comes tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэхдээ нөгөө номыг авчирна.	[illegible]
k	**When** her son came, Dulmaa was preparing a meal.	Хүүгээ ирэхэд Дулмаа хоол хийж байсан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.18 "-х бүрд; -х болгонд" = "each time"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- "-х болгонд" is mainly used in the **colloquial** language
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used (**ex. b-d**)
- because the action is habitual, the *NDS* "-даг" is used.

a	**Each time** he comes to my home, I treat him to a nice meal.	Түүнийг манайд ирэх бүрд/ болгонд би амт-тай хоолоор дайлдаг.	[illegible]

b	**Each time** he meets me, he asks about you.	Тэр надтай уулзах бүрдээ / болгондоо чамайг асуудаг.	(Бүхнээ/ бүхнээ/) хүнтэй учраа/ асуудаг/ чамд/ хэрэгтэй бүхнээ/ бүрэн/
c	**Each time** I return to my homeland, I meet with my childhood friends.	Би нутагтаа очих бүрдээ / болгондоо багынхаа найз нартай уулздаг.	Би/ очиж/ нутагтаа/ (Бүхнээ/ бүхнээ/) бяцхан/ нас/ нас/ багаас/ би/ хүмүүс/ очиж/ нутаг/ нутгаа/ бүхнээ/ бүрэн/
d	**Each time** he came to school, he took a taxi.	Тэр хичээлдээ очих бүрдээ / болгондоо таксигаар ирдэг байсан.	Өчигдөр/ (Бүхнээ/ бүхнээ/) сургуульд/ очиж/ бүх/ хичээлээ/ сургуульд/ таксигаар/ бүхнээ/ бүрэн/

2.2.2.2.19 "–х + –тай зэрэг" = "as soon as; the moment ..."

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- the word "зэрэг" means 'at the same time' and indicates the **main idea** of this conjunction: two actions happen **at the same time** or **shortly after each other**
- similar to the **sVDS** "–маг" (p. 164) which demands an immediate succession of actions
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used(**ex. d**)

a	**The moment** we sat down, the meeting started.	Биднийг суухтай зэрэг л хурал эхлэв.	Хүлээсэн/ // Өнөөдөр/ // би/ сандаа/ суухаа/ /// хурал/ эхлэв/
b	**As soon as** he leaves, all work will come to a standstill.	Түүнийг явахтай зэрэг бүх ажил унтарна.	Хөдөлгөөн/ // Өнөөдөр/ // би/ гэрээсээ/ явахаа/ /// бүх/ ажил/
c	Please tell me **as soon as** your father comes.	Аавыгаа ирэхтэй зэрэг надад хэлээрэй.	Надад/ // Хэн ч/ би/ аавыгаа/ ирэхэд/ ///
d	**Whenever she happens to** see me she rattles away.	Тэр надтай уулзахтайгаа зэрэг хамаг юмаа тоочдог.	Гэнэт/ сандаг/ гэнэдэг/ би/ Өнөөдөр/ // Өнөөдөр/ // би/ хүмүүстэй/ // би/

2.2.2.2.20 "–(ж бай)х хоорондоо" = "while; before"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- when used with the progressive tense "–ж бай–", it indicates a progressive action (**ex. a-d**)
- with a **common subject**, the RS is used (**ex. d**)
- when used in the form "–х хоорондоо", the action is still in the **future** and hasn't or couldn't take place yet

a	**While** it **was** raining, I did my homework.	Борооны дунд би гэрийнхээ даалгаврыг хийсэн.	Би/ // Борооны/ // дунд/ // гэрийнхээ/ даалгаврыг/ // хийсэн/
b	A thief stole two expensive coats from our flat **while** we **were** watching a video.	Биднийг видео үзэж байх хоорондоо хулгайч гэрээс 2 үнэтэй дээл авчихжээ.	Хулгайч/ // Бидний/ // гэрээс/ // 2/ // Би/ // видео/ // үзэж/ //
c	**While** we **were** living in Mongolia, many things changed in Germany.	Биднийг Монголд амьдарч байх хоорондоо Германд их юм өөрчлөгджээ.	Германд/ // Монголд/ // би/ // амьдрах/ // Бидний/ //
d	**While** he **was** talking, he smoked.	Тэр ярьж байх хоорондоо тамхи татсан.	Тамхи/ // Тэр/ // ярьж/ //

e	**Before** I could give him the medicine, he died.	Намайг түүнд эм өгөх хооронд тэр нас барсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
f	**Before** I could ask her, she wept.	Намайг юм асуух хооронд тэр уйлчихсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
g	**Before** our parents come, we have to tidy up the flat.	Эзэж аав хоёрыг ирэх хооронд бид гэрээ янзлах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.2.2.21 "–х завсар; ... –х зуур" = "besides; while"

- introduces **temporal clauses**; literal translation 'in the.... gap/break of'
- compare with the "–х хооронд" (page 316) and the **sVDS** "–игаа" (p. 171)

a	**Besides** having a job, I'm studying Mongolian. (**"In the gap of doing** my main work...")	Би үндсэн ажлаа хийх завсар монгол хэл сурч байна.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	**While** he had been in the countryside, we moved into a new flat. ("**In the gap of** his **going** to the countryside and **coming** back ...")	Түүнийг хөдөө яваад ирэх завсар манайх шинэ байранд орсон.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.2.2.22 "(Хэрэв) ... –бал/–вал" = "if"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- compare with the **conditional sVDS** "–вал" (p. 161)
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**If** you send your letter now, he'll receive it in 2 days.	(Хэрэв)та захиагаа одоо явуулбал тэр 2 өдрийн дараа түүнийг авна.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	**If** you meet her, please ask her about this.	(Хэрэв) та түүнтэй уулзвал энэ тухай түүнээс асуугаарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	**If** you go to the department store tomorrow, please buy me 1 kg of butter.	(Хэрэв) чи маргааш их дэлгүүрт очвол надад 1 кило цөцгийн тос аваарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.2.2.23 "(Хэрэв) ... –х тохиолдолд" = "provided that; in case"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- very similar to –бал (above), but stronger in its meaning
- more used for **single situations** and not for general statements
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Provided that** you give this book back on Monday, I'll loan it to you.	(Хэрэв) та энэ номыг нэгдэх өдөр буцааж өгөх тохиолдолд би түүнийг танд түр өгч болох юм.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	**In case** you can't come, please call me well ahead.	(Хэрэв) чи ирж чадахгүй тохиолдолд над руу цаг тухайд нь утсаар яриарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

2.2.2.2.24 "(Хэрэв) ..нөхцөлд" = "provided that; under the condition that"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- often used in official language
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it
- always used with an ***NDS***

a	**Provided that** one studies every day, one can probably learn a foreign language well.	Өдөр тутам үзсэн нөхцөлд гадаад хэлийг сайн сурч болох байх.	[illegible]
b	**Under the condition that** you pay the money in advance, I will be able to rent my flat.	Та мөнгөө урьдчилан төлөх/ төлсөн нөхцөлд би байраа хөлслүүлж болох юм.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.25 "Хэдийгээр ... болов" = "although"

- introduces **concessive clauses**
- compare with the **concessive sVDS** "~вч" (p. 162)
- the word "хэдийгээр" **intensifies** the concessive meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Although** he had a severe cold, he went outside.	Хэдийгээр тэр хүнд ханиадтай байсан болов гадагш явсан.	[illegible]
b	**Although** it was a very pressing problem, the discussion about it was postponed.	Хэдийгээр маш яаралтай асуудал байсан болов түүнийг авч үзэхийг хойшлуулжээ.	[illegible]
c	**Although** she has never been to England, she knows English perfectly.	Хэдийгээр тэр Англид очиж байгаагүй болов англи хэлийг төгс мэддэг.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.26 "~сан + ~аар" = "the way; as"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- very similar to "~саны дагуу" (p. 314) and "тэгснээр" (p. 322)

a	I will do it **the way** you said.	Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.	[illegible]
b	Work is not always carried out **the way** you want it to be.	Ямар ч ажил тэр бүр хүссэнээр бүтдэггүй.	[illegible]
c	You have to do everything in order, **as** mentioned in the instructions.	Бүх юмыг зааварт дурдсанаар дэс дараа~лан хийх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.27 "~х/~сан тухай/ талаар" = "... about" (added on later)

- introduces **object clauses**
- always takes the ***past or future NDS*** "~сан / ~х"
- with common subjects the RS appears

a	Paul is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Пол Монголд ирэх тухайгаа бодож байна.	[illegible]
b	Please talk **about** your trip to the countryside. ("**about** your having gone ...")	Та хөдөө явсан талаараа яриарай.	[illegible]

2.2.3 Proword-Conjunctions

All of the following conjunctions contain a **proword** (mostly a demonstrative proword). That's why we call them 'proword-conjunctions'. Such conjunctions **refer to something which was mentioned before** (either one or more sentences). Therefore, such conjunctions are usually **placed at the beginning** of a new sentence. The only conjunction in this group that doesn't contain a demonstrative proword, is "учир нь". But the "нь" also refers to something mentioned before ("the reason *for it being* ...")

2.2.3.1 OVERVIEW OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

1	Мөн <u>түүнчлэн</u> ...	[illegible]	... . Moreover, ... and also ...
2	<u>Түүнээс</u> гадна...	[illegible]	... . Besides, ...
3	<u>Түүгээр</u> ч барахгүй ... (<u>Тэр</u> ч байтугай ...)	[illegible]	... . Furthermore, ... On top of **that,** ...
4	Тэгээд ... Ингээд ...	[illegible] .... [illegible]	... . Then ... . After **that** ... . And **so** ...
5	<u>Тэгэх</u>лээр ... Ингэхлээр...	[illegible] .... [illegible]	... . Consequently, ...
6	<u>Тэгсэн</u>ээр ... Ингэснээр ...	[illegible] • [illegible]	... . By doing **this/that,** ... . As a result of **this/that,** ...
7	Эс <u>тэгвэл</u> ...	[illegible]	... .Otherwise ... . If not, ...
8	<u>Тэгэхэд</u> ...	[illegible]	... . "As ... doing that..."
9	<u>Тийнхүү</u> ...	[illegible]	... .Thus, ...
10	<u>Тийм</u> учраас ...	[illegible]	... . That's (the reason) why ... . For **this/that** reason, ...
11	Учир <u>нь</u> ...	[illegible]	... for ... ... because ...
12	<u>Тийм</u> болохоор...	[illegible]	... . Therefore, ...
13	Хэдий <u>тийм</u> болов ... (гэсэн ч гэсэн ...) (тэглээ ч гэсэн ...)	[illegible] .... ([illegible] ....) ([illegible] ....)	... . Nevertheless, ... Despite **this/that**, ...
14	<u>Нөгөө</u> талаас ...	[illegible]	... . On the **other** hand, ...
15	<u>Яагаад</u> гэвэл...	[illegible]	... . The reason for this is, ... for ...; ... because ...
16	<u>Тэгсэн</u> чинь ...	[illegible]	... . But, you know, ...

2.2.3.2 USAGE OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.3.2.1 "(Мөн) түүнчлэн" = "Moreover; ... and also"

- usually connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**)
- when it connects two **predicate parts**, the verb takes an *NDS* and, instead of a period, there is a comma (**ex.b**)
- compare with p. 301 (non-predicate parts)

a	I came to Mongolia and made a lot of friends. **Moreover,** I learned many things about Mongolians.	Би Монголд ирээд олон найз нөхөдтэй болсон. Мөн түүнчлэн монголчуудын тухай их зүйл мэдэж авсан.	[illegible]
b	This machine does language translations **and also** solves math problems.	Энэ машин хэлний орчуулга хийдэг, (мөн) түүнчлэн тоо боддог.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.2 "Түүнээс гадна" = "Besides; ... and moreover"

- connects either two sentences (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
- literal translation: 'outside of that'

a	This summer I was very busy. Many guests came to my home, I renovated my apartment, and I went to the countryside. **Besides,** I was required to finish writing my book.	Би энэ зун их завгүй байсан. Манайд олон зочид ирсэн, байраа засварласан, хөдөө явсан. Түүнээс гадна би номоо бичиж дуусгах шаардлагатай байсан.	[illegible]
b	Because he had slept badly, **and moreover,** he hadn't eaten proper food, he looked tired all day long.	Тэр муу унтсан, түүнээс гадна олигтой хоол идээгүй учраас бүтэн өдржин ядруу харагдсан.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.3 "Түүгээр ч барахгүй" = "Furthermore"

- connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex. b-c**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
- literal translation: 'by *that* it doesn't end'
- note the similar conjunction "тэр ч байтугай", which is even stronger in its meaning(**ex. d**); compare with page 307

a	I saw the president a couple of times. **Furthermore,** I met him once.	Би ерөнхийлөгчийг хэд хэдэн удаа харсан. Түүгээр ч барахгүй би нэг удаа түүнтэй уулзсан.	[illegible]
b	I know him well, because I worked together with him for many years, and **furthermore,** I live in the same building.	Би түүнтэй олон жил хамт ажилласан, түүгээр ч барахгүй бид нар нэг байранд амьдардаг тул би түүнийг сайн мэднэ.	[illegible]

c	Because he slept badly **and on top of that** hasn't eaten anything, it's no wonder he is tired.	Тэр муу унтсан, <u>түүгээр ч барахгүй</u> огт хоол идээгүй учраас ядрах нь аргагүй.	[illegible]
d	He came to Mongolia and is living just like a Mongolian. **On top of that,** he took a Mongolian as his wife.	Тэр Монголд ирээд яг монгол хүн шиг амьдарч байна. <u>Тэр ч байтугай</u> монгол эхнэр авсан.	[illegible]

<u>2.2.3.2.4 "Тэгээд; Ингээд" = "Then; After that"</u>

- always connects **two sentences**
- has either a **temporal** meaning (**ex. a-b**) or expresses that a particular situation is made use of (**ex. c-d**)
- literal translation: '(someone) does so and then' (compare with the sVDS "~аад": p. 159)

a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **Then** I went straight to bed.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажилласан. <u>Тэгээд</u> шууд унтсан.	[illegible]
b	Tomorrow I'll go together with my friend to a shop. **After that,** we both will eat at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel.	Би маргааш найзтай-гаа хамт дэлгүүр явна. <u>Тэгээд</u> бид хоёр Улаан-баатар зочид буудалд хоол иднэ.	[illegible]
c	Yesterday I went together with my friend to a shop. **And so** we bought everything we needed.	Би өчигдөр найзтайгаа хамт дэлгүүрт очсон. <u>Тэгээд</u> бид хоёр бүх шаардлагатай зүйлээ худалдаж авсан.	[illegible]
d	Yesterday evening he came to my house. **And so** we chatted about the good old days until the wee hours.	Тэр өчигдөр орой манай гэрт ирсэн. <u>Тэгээд</u> бид хоёр шөнө дөл болтол хууч хөөрсөн.	[illegible]

<u>2.2.3.2.16 "Тэгсэн чинь" = "But, you know, .../ And then?"</u> (added later on)

- always connects **two sentences**
- has a **temporal** meaning and also expresses that the 2nd action happened unexpectedly considering the first action.
- used to encourage others to keep on talking (e.g. after interruption) "Тэгсэн чинь?"

a	Yesterday I put my book here. **But, you know,** today it's not here.	Би өчигдөр номоо энд тавьсан. <u>Тэгсэн чинь</u> өнөөдөр байхгүй байна.	[illegible]
a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **But, you know,** I don't feel tired today.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажил-ласан. <u>Тэгсэн чинь</u> өнөөдөр ядрахгүй байна.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.5 "Тэгэхлээр ; Ингэхлээр" = "Consequently"

- connects **two sentences**
- literal translation: 'by doing it so' (compare with the sVDS "~хлаар")

a	Our lesson is over. **Consequently,** you may go home.	Бидний хичээл дуусла. Тэгэхлээр та харьж болно.	[illegible]
b	There are no planes flying to Sainshand. **Consequently,** we'll go by train.	Сайншанд руу онгоц нисдэггүй. Ингэхлээр бид галт тэргээр явна.	[illegible]
c	Our house is close to the school. **Consequently,** I walk there most of the time.	Манайх сургуульд ойрхон. Тэгэхлээр би голдуу явган явдаг.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.6 "Тэгснээр ; Ингэснээр" = "By doing this/that"

- connects a **longer paragraph** with a sentence.
- literal translation: 'by having done so'

a	**By doing that,** this problem will be solved once and for all.	Тэгснээр энэ асуудал бүрмөсөн шийдвэрлэгдэх болно.	[illegible]
b	**As a result of this,** the teaching quality of that particular school improved considerably.	Ингэснээр тус сургуулийн сургалтын чанар эрс дээшилсэн.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.7 "Эс тэгвэл" = "Otherwise; If not"

- connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**)
- literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do this/that'
- compare with "эсвэл"

a	Go now. **Otherwise** I'll call the police.	Чи одоо яв. Эс тэгвэл би цагдаа дуудна.	[illegible]
b	We have to take a taxi. **If not,** we'll probably be late.	Бид таксигаар явах хэрэгтэй. Эс тэгвэл хожимдож магадгүй.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.8 "Тэгэхэд" = "As ... doing that"

- connects **two sentences**
- the literal translation 'as ... doing that' is very clumsy in English. We would make one sentence instead, with a *clause expressing the* "тэгэ~".
- compare with "~хад" ('when'; 'as'; see p. 315)

a	**When** *he came to my home early and asked for help,* I agreed.	Тэр манайд эрт ирээд туслахыг гуйсан. Тэгэхэд нь би зөвшөөрсөн.	[illegible]
b	**When** *I went very late to his home,* he was sleeping.	Би тэднийд маш орой очсон. Тэгэхэд тэр унтаж байсан.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.9 "Тийнхүү; Ийнхүү" = "Thus"

- connects a **longer paragraph** (more than one sentence) with a final statement sentence; but sometimes the conjunction has just the function of filling a gap

a'	**Thus**, I spent my summer vacation in a very nice and funny way.	Ийнхүү би зуныхаа амралттыг маш хөгжөөнтэй сайхан өнгөрөөсөн.	[illegible]
b	**Thus**, at the end of a long discussion, they decided to go.	Тийнхүү удаан ярилцсаны эцэст тэд явахаар шийдсэн.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.10 "Тийм учраас" = "That's (the reason) why"

- connects usually **two sentences** or two whole **paragraphs**
- literal translation: 'from that reason'

a	Yesterday my car broke down. **That's why** I couldn't go to 'Nalaikh'.	Өчигдөр миний машин эвдэрсэн. Тийм учраас би Налайх явж чадаагүй.	[illegible]
b	Some children have beaten up my son. **For that reason,** he doesn't like to go to school any longer.	Зарим хүүхэд хүүг минь зодсон. Тийм учраас тэр сургуульдаа явах дургүй болсон.	[illegible]
c	I don't have school today. **That's why** I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй. Тийм учраас номын санд очиж ном уншив.	[illegible]
d	In shop No.1, there was no bread. **For that reason,** Dulmaa went to the department store.	1-р дэлгүүрт талх байгаагүй. Тийм учраас Дулмаа их дэлгүүр луу явжээ.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.11 "Учир нь" = "for; because"

- structurally, it connects **two sentences**, but it often appears after a comma, thus connecting **two predicate parts** (**ex. c-d**).
- compare with "учир" where the reason is mentioned first, whereas with "учир нь", the reason comes second (in the clause), like with "Яагаад гэвэл"
- the "нь" refers to the first (part of the) sentence (=statement) and could be translated with "(the reason) **for this being**".
- because the sentence or predicate part before this conjunction is complete, verbs with a ***TTS*** are used (e.g. "-на" in **ex. d-e**)

a	I can't do this now **because** I don't have time.	Би үүнийг одоо хийж чадахгүй. Учир нь би их завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	I can't tell you anything about this book **because** I haven't read it.	Би энэ номын тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй. Учир нь би түүнийг уншаагүй.	[illegible]
c	Today I went to the library and read a book, **for** we didn't have school.	Би өнөөдөр номын санд очиж ном уншсан, учир нь манайх хичээлгүй байсан.	[illegible]

2.3.2.1.2 Interrogative Particle "уу²/ юу²"

In the heading, we put 'particle' in singular, for although there are 4 forms altogether, it is in fact **one** particle, the sound "уу/ үү". But being a vowel, this particle sometimes needs an *inserted* "ю". In Cyrillic, there are two versions each, to **comply with vowel harmony** ("уу/ юу" and "үү/ юү"). In Classical Script, there are just the two versions [illegible] and [illegible].
Thus, the following rule:

☛	**after long vowels and diphthongs**	---> юу/ юү
	after everything else	---> уу/ үү

This particle can be used to **express a polite request** and has its equivalent in English (ex. **i-j**). Notice the usage of this particle in the conjunction "...уу, үгүй юу" (**ex. k-l**).

Examples: (long vowels and diphthongs *in italics*)

a	Do you have bread at home?	Танайд талх байна уу?	[illegible]
b	Is Bat a student?	Бат оюутан уу?	[illegible]
c	Is Bat a doctor?	Бат эмч үү?	[illegible]
d	Did your older brother come?	Ах чинь ирсэн үү?	[illegible]
e	Are there books here?	Энд ном байгаа юу?	[illegible]
f	Is this a pencil?	Энэ харандаа юу?	[illegible]
g	Is gold very expensive in Mongolia?	Монголд алт их үнэтэй юу?	[illegible]
h	Is this book the 'Shine Geree' (=New Testament)?	Энэ ном бол шинэ гэрээ юу?	[illegible]
i	Would you please come in.	Та орно уу.	[illegible]
j	Would you help me, please?	Та надад тусалж өгнө үү.	[illegible]
k	Did he come or not?	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу?	[illegible]
l	I don't know **whether** he came **or not**.	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2 NEGATIVE PARTICLES

A sentence is turned from an affirmative into a negative sentence with the negative particles. Most of these particles are true particles and don't have any lexical meaning in themselves. But some (e.g. "үгүй, биш") could also be used as a **one-word sentence** and have some lexical meaning (e.g. 'No' as a reply to a question). Nevertheless, we have included them to the particles.

The negative particles could be divided into the following two subgroups (see also page 326):
- **postpositional** negative particles: they always follow **after** the word they negate
- **prepositional** negative particles: they always stand **before** the word they negate

2.3.2.2.1 Negative Particle "биш"

It follows after ***nouns*** (**ex. a-c**), ***adjectives*** (**ex. d-g**), ***other parts of speech that serve as a noun*** (**ex. h-i**) or ***verb with an NDS*** (**ex. j-k**). Therefore it can be declined (**ex. l-m**). As an answer to a question, it can be used by itself (**ex. n**), and, by stressing the **final vowel** (only evident in Classical Script), its meaning is intensified (**ex. o**). The combination "биш" + "үү" = "бишүү" has an intensifying (**ex. p**) and sometimes even warning (**ex. q**) meaning. Notice the special usage together with the word "ямар" (**ex. r-t**).

a	This is **not** *a table*.	Энэ – ширээ биш.	[illegible]
b	I'm **not** *a teacher*, I am a student.	Би багш биш, оюутан байна.	[illegible]
c	I'm **not** *the person* responsible for this.	Би үүнийг хариуцдаг хүн биш.	[illegible]
d	I don't find this film very interesting. ("To me this film is of **no** great interest.")	Энэ кино надад их сонирхолтой биш байна.	[illegible]
e	I don't like him. ("I am **not** good to him.")	Би түүнд сайн биш.	[illegible]
f	My flat is **not** very far from here.	Манай гэр эндээс их хол биш.	[illegible]
g	Nowadays, you can see many **non**-Mongolians in the streets of Ulaanbaatar.	Улаанбаатарын гудамжинд монгол биш хүмүүс их үзэгдэх болжээ.	[illegible]
h	No, this is **not** *mine*.	Үгүй, энэ миний биш.	[illegible]
i	I speak German, **not** *Mongolian*.	Би монголоор биш, германаар ярьдаг хүн.	[illegible]
j	Mother doesn't just *sit* around, so make your meal yourself!	Ээж зүгээр суугаа биш, чи өөрөө хоол хий.	[illegible]
k	I don't *read* your books, so how should I know?	Би чиний ном уншдаг биш, яаж мэдэх юм бэ?	[illegible]
l	This book is not only an **un***interesting*, but also a totally unnecessary book.	Энэ бол сонирхолтой бишээр барахгүй шал хэрэггүй ном.	[illegible]
m	We didn't know that he doesn't like candies. ("...that he isn't with *pleasure* in candies.")	Түүний чихэрт дуртай бишийг бид нар мэдэхгүй байсан.	[illegible]
n	-Is that your *book*? -**No**.	–Тэр чиний ном уу? –Биш.	[illegible]
o	-Are you *Professor Dorj*? -**No, no**.	–Та профессор Дорж мөн үү? –Бишээ.	[illegible]
p	That's how it is! ("Is it **not** so?")	Ийм бишүү. (Ийм шүү дээ)	[illegible]
q	He came! ("Didn't he come?")	Тэр ирсэн бишүү.	[illegible]
r	***But*** he isn't Mongolian! How should he understand this?	Тэр ямар монгол хүн биш, үүнийг яаж ойлгох вэ дээ.	[illegible]
s	You're **not** believing me ***at all***!	Чи ямар надад итгэдэг биш дээ.	[illegible]
t	They're **not** the ones to ***ever*** give you money!	Тэд нар чамд ямар ч мөнгө өгдөг биш дээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.2 Negative Particle "бус".

This particle has more **lexical** than grammatical meaning and serves almost like a derivational suffix. It is always added after *nouns* or *adjectives*. In English, the following lexical meanings can be expressed with this particle: **non**-smoker, **il***legal*, **un***interesting*, **extra***ordinary*, etc. It can be declined (**ex. c**) and is widely used in literature.

a	In Mongolia there are many **non**-government organizations.	Монголд засгийн газрын бус байгууллага олон бий.	[illegible]
b	I subscribe to the periodical publications through the post office, the **non**-periodical publications I buy at the kiosk.	Би тогтмол хэвлэлийг шуудангаар захиалж, тогтмол бус хэвлэлийг мухлагаас худалдаж авдаг.	[illegible]
c	He lived abroad **il***legally* for many years.	Тэр гадаад оронд олон жил хууль бусаар амьдарч байсан.	[illegible]
d	Recently, that organization held its **extra**ordinary congress.	Саяхан тус байгууллага ээлжит бус их хурлаа хийв.	[illegible]
e	You know, all of us are **non**-party members.	Бид бүгдээрээ намын гишүүн бус хүмүүс билээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3 Negative Particle "(ү)гүй".

This particle has two main functions:

2.3.2.2.3.1 After Nouns

When the particle "–гүй" appears with a ***noun***, then it is translated as '**to be without** ...'. In the same way as the "–тай" suffix sometimes expresses the meaning 'to be with ...', so also the particle "–гүй" can express 'to be without'. In this function, it has become a derivational suffix (see page 50, No.2). This becomes very evident in **ex. g**, where the noun is never used without the particle "гүй".
When the English translation is '**no**', then the sentence always contains the **verb 'to have'**; the verb 'to be' demands the particle "биш"! With this particle, the **conjunction 'and'** is built (**ex. i**). In **poetry**, this particle is usually used **unshortened** (**ex. j**).

(nouns *in italics)*

a	I have **no** *time*. ("I'm being **without** *time*.")	Би завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	I have **no** *desire*. ("I'm being **without** *desire*.")	Би хүсэлгүй байна.	[illegible]
c	I don't like 'bansh'-soup. (I'm **without** *pleasure* in 'bansh'-soup.")	Би банштай шөлөнд дургүй.	[illegible]
d	I don't need bread. ("I'm **without** *necessity* of bread.")	Надад талх хэрэггүй.	[illegible]
e	It musn't be that way! ("Such being **without** a *law*.")	Ийм байх ёсгүй!	[illegible]
f	It's impossible for me to meet him. ("I **am without** *the possibility* of meeting him.")	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	[illegible]
g	I did this accidentally. ("I did this **without** *thinking*.")	Би үүнийг санамсаргүйгээр хийсэн.	[illegible]

h	What an unlucky person I am! ("person **without** *luck*")	Би ямар азгүй хүн бэ!	[illegible]
i	I worked day **and** night.	Би өдөр шөнөгүй ажилласан.	[illegible]
j	**To be without** *knowledge* is this life's suffering.	Эрдэм үгүй бол энэ насны зовлон.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3.2 After Verbs

The verbs always demand an NDS. These suffixes can either have the funcion of a **TTS** (**ex. a-g**), or they can serve as attributes (**ex. h-i**).
Note that this particle **is no true particle**, because it has a lexical meaning (**'absence, lack'**). Therefore it can be declined (**ex. j**). Together with *certain verbs, it can build* **new verbs**:
"үгүй бай–" = to be absent (**ex. k**)
"үгүй хий–" = to spend, to use up, to destroy (**ex. l**)
"үгүй бол–" =to die (**ex. m**).
The **unshortened** particle can be used by itself, meaning 'to not be, to not exist; no' (**ex. n-p**).
The expression "... –гүй (бол) болохгүй" can be translated as 'must' (**ex. q**).
Notice that this particle is used to build the **conjunction** 'whether ... or not' (**ex. r**).

a	He did**n't** come yesterday.	Тэр өчигдөр ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
b	I could**n't** do this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
c	My older brother has**n't** left for the countryside.	Манай ах хөдөө явсангүй.	[illegible]
d	Smoking is **not** allowed here.	Энд тамхи татаж болохгүй.	[illegible]
e	I will probably **n**ever learn Chinese.	Би хятад хэлийг хэзээ ч сурахгүй байх.	[illegible]
f	Don't you have bread?	Чамд талх байхгүй юу?	[illegible]
g	I don't get up early.	Би эрт босдоггүй.	[illegible]
h	People who don't smoke get few illnesses.	Тамхи татдаггүй хүнд өвчин бага тусдаг.	[illegible]
i	There is no benefit in talking again and again to someone who does**n't** understand me. ("No matter how often I talk with a person that does**n't** understand me, it's without benefit.")	Намайг ойлгохгүй хүнтэй би хичнээн ярилцах ч нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
j	Many people came to my home in my **absence**.	Миний үгүйд олон хүн манайд очсон.	[illegible]
k	He *was* **absent** in yesterday's meeting.	Өчигдрийн цуглаан дээр тэр үгүй байв.	[illegible]
l	We *spent* all our money within a few days.	Бид хэдхэн хоногийн дотор бүх мөнгөө үгүй хийсэн.	[illegible]

m	In the year of the Pig, the Great Khaan **deceased.**	Гахай жил Их Хаан <u>үгүй</u> болов.	[illegible]
n	**There is not** one person whatsoever who doesn't like money.	Монгөнд дургүй хүн нэг ч <u>үгүй</u>. (нэг ч байхгүй)	[illegible]
o	-Do you have a family? -**No**.	-Та гэр бүлтэй юу? -<u>Үгүй</u>.	[illegible]
p	-Do you speak Mongolian? -Oh, **no**!	-Та монголоор ярьдаг уу? -<u>Үгүй</u> дээ.	[illegible]
q	I **must** go now.	Би явах<u>гүй</u> (бол) болох<u>гүй</u>.	[illegible]
r	I don't know whether he came or **not.**	Тэр ирсэн үү, <u>үгүй</u> юу гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3.3 *Note to the Word* "алга"

Similar to "үгүй", this particle also has **its own lexical** meaning, i.e., strictly speaking, it is **not a true particle**. It can't be declined. In **ex. c**, "алга" is part of a fixed expression. Together with the ***particle*** "даа" it expresses that one is joking or happy (**ex. d**). With the ***particle*** "л" it expresses 'still not' (**ex. e-f**).

a	I have **no** money.	Надад мөнгө <u>алга</u>.	[illegible]
b	**There is nothing** to be afraid of.	Айж цочих юм <u>алга</u>.	[illegible]
c	My bag has **dis**appeared.	Миний цүнх <u>алга</u> болчихжээ.	[illegible]
d	I don't have anything!	Надад юу ч <u>алга</u> даа.	[illegible]
e	He is **still not here.**	Тэр одоо хүртэл <u>алга</u> л байна.	[illegible]
f	**There is still no** news from him.	Түүнээс ойрдоо сураг <u>алга</u> л байна.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.4 Negative Particle "ҮЛ"

This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with an NDS, which are **attributes** to a ***noun*** (**ex. a-c**). In English there are many different translations. Furthermore, it can be used like "эс" before verbs with a VDS (**ex. e-g**). With some verbs (with a TTS; mainly "-на") it appears in a **fixed expression** in written language and has an official tone: бол- , зөвшөөр-, ойшоо-, ойлго- (**ex. h-i**).

a	Are there many **il***literates* in Mongolia? ("... letters **not** knowing *people*...")	Монголд бичиг үсэг <u>үл</u> мэдэгч хүн олон байна уу?	[illegible]
b	In this book (they) write about an **in**visible person. ("...**not** being seen *person*...")	Энэ номонд <u>үл</u> үзэгдэгч хүний тухай бичсэн байна.	[illegible]
c	There is a **mis**understanding between them. ("... a *state* of **not** understanding each other...")	Тэдний хооронд <u>үл</u> ойлголцоо байдал бий болжээ.	[illegible]

d	He **dis**respected me. ("He did**n't** respect me.")	Тэр намайг <u>үл</u> ойшоов. (Тэр намайг ойшоосонгүй.)	[illegible]
e	He did**n't** agree with this and refused to sign.	Тэр үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрч гарын үсэг зурахаас татгалзав.	[illegible]
f	If you do**n't** agree with this, you may not sign.	Та үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрвөл гарын үсэг зурахгүй байж болно.	[illegible]
g	The boy/man thought that if he would **not** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>үл</u> олоч маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо.	[illegible]
h	Smoking is **forbidden**! (..."is **not** OK.")	Тамхи татаж <u>үл</u> болно!	[illegible]
i	**No** Entry! ("Entering **not** allowed!")	Орохыг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрнэ!	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.5 Negative Particle "эс"

This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with a VDS (**ex. a-c**), sometimes before verbs with a NDS (**ex. d**; because "үл мэдэгч" means 'illiterate', the "эс" is used in this context) or a TTS (mainly past, **ex. e-f**). **Ex. g** is very **colloquial** and belongs to the group of verbs with a TTS.

a	I was very surprised when he did**n't** come.	Түүнийг <u>эс</u> ирэхээр би их гайхсан.	[illegible]
b	The boy/man thought that if he would**n't** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>эс</u> олоч маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо.	[illegible]
c	I have decided to **not** give him an answer.	Би түүнд хариу <u>эс</u> өгэхээр шийдсэн.	[illegible]
d	He was sitting there with an expression on his face as if he did**n't** know.	Тэр <u>эс</u> мэдэгч царай-лаад сууж байсан.	[illegible]
e	Although I worked on this matter diligently for many days, they did**n't** agree.	Би энэ талаар олон хоног хөөцөлдсөн болоч тэд нар <u>эс</u> зөвшөөрөв.	[illegible]
f	Although the doctors were working nonstop for many days, they could**n't** save his life.	Эмч нар олон хоног нойр хоолгүй ажилласан болоч түүний амь насыг аварч <u>эс</u> чадлаа.	[illegible]
g	Have**n't** I told you!	Би <u>эс</u> хэлгүү чамд!	only colloquial language

2.3.2.2.6 Negative Particle "бүү"

This particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex.a,b,e,f,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It's very similar to "биттгий", but stronger in its meaning. Notice how this particle is used in **ex. e** (saying) and **f** (conjunction).

a	Don**'t** smoke here!	Энд тамхи бүү тат!	[illegible]
b	Don**'t** do (whatever) you're afraid of, and don**'t** be afraid of (whatever) you do.	Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай.	[illegible]
c	If only there was **no** more war.	Дайн дахин бүү үзэгдэг.	[illegible]
d	Don**'t** listen to his words.	Түүний үгийг бүү сонсоорой.	[illegible]
e	I don**'t** have a clue whether he came or not.	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу, бүү мэд.	[illegible]
f	I have two children, **not** to mention my wife.	Надад эхнэр бүү хэл хоёр хүүхэд бий.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.7 Negative Particle "биттгий"

Similar to "бүү", this particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex. d,e,h,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It also appears in the **conjunction** "биттгий хэл" (**ex. h**).

a	Please don**'t** smoke here.	Энд тамхи биттгий татаарай.	[illegible]
b	Please don**'t** tell this to others.	Үүнийг хүнд биттгий хэлээрэй.	[illegible]
c	Please do **not** go.	Чи биттгий яваач.	[illegible]
d	Don**'t** worry!	Биттгий санаа зов!	[illegible]
e	Do **not** touch!	Гар биттгий хүр!	[illegible]
f	If only he wouldn**'t** come!	Тэр биттгий ирээсэй.	[illegible]
g	He is **not** to meet my friend.	Тэр миний найзтай биттгий уулзаг.	[illegible]
h	I can't speak Russian, **not** to mention English.	Би англиар биттгий хэл ороосоор ч ярьж чадахгүй.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3 MODAL PARTICLES

Modal particles **intensify, moderate,** or else **change** statements according to the **present mood of the speaker**. Only from the whole context will it be clear what mood the speaker is in. So, often the given translation is only one of many possible ways to express that particular mood. In English, people would sometimes just raise the voice or say a normal statement with more determination or a particular expression of the face and not use an extra particle or word. Some particles can appear together. If so, their order is fixed. When the particles connect and equate two elements, they **serve as a copula**.

2.3.2.3.1 Modal Particle "шуу"

The particle "шуу" (not complying with vowel harmony) follows usually **after** a verb with a TTS (**ex. a-e**) or after a ***noun*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. f-g**). The main function is to **communicate something** to another person. This could be an affirmation (**ex. a, f**), a praise (**ex. b**), a rebuke (**ex. c**), a threat (**ex. d, g**), an information (**ex. e**), etc.

Notice that there is a particle "шуу[2]" which is used rarely and follows after NOUN or verbs with an NDS (**ex. h-i**). It expresses that something **can't be done wholeheartedly** or very well (e.g. due to illness; **ex.h**), or it shows a **modest attitude** (**ex. i**).

a	Today is **really** a nice day.	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шуу.	[illegible]
b	You speak English very well **indeed**.	Та англиар сайн ярьж байна шуу.	[illegible]
c	He **does** always remember you!	Тэр үргэлж чамайг бодож явдаг шуу.	[illegible]
d	Hey, I will report you to the teacher!	Би чамайг багшид хэлнэ шуу.	[illegible]
e	I **DID** drink tea!	Би цай уусан шуу.	[illegible]
f	*This* is **really** a nice *animal!*	Энэ мөн сайхан амьтан шуу.	[illegible]
g	*This* is my *book*, **you know!**	Энэ миний ном шуу.	[illegible]
h	Well, (I) do my work **after a fashion**.	Ажлаа хийсэн шуу болж байна.	[illegible]
i	I was in a hurry and made quickly **some sort of a** meal.	Би яараад нэг жоохон шуу юм хийчихлээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.2 Modal Particle "даа[4]"

This particle follows usually after verbs with a TTS (**ex. a-j**) or a PTS (**ex. k-m**). In the translation it's similar to "шуу", but communicating to others is not the main function. An exact meaning is often only clear from the whole context (e.g. **ex. m**). That's why we try to give in parentheses a context situation. In certain sentences, this particle, together with other words, forms a ***fixed expression*** (**ex. n,o**; see page 206). If it's used together with other particles, "даа" is always put at the end (**ex. p-q**).

a	-Today is really a nice day. -Yes, **indeed**, a really nice day! (2 old people, having a lot of time to talk)	–Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шуу! –Тийм байна. Үнэхээр сайхан өдөр байна даа.	[illegible] - [illegible] - [illegible]
b	My! How hot it is here! (beginning of a conversation)	Энд мөн ч халуун байна даа.	[illegible]

c	**Alas**, and now, what shall we do? (expression of sorrow)	Одоо бид нар яалаа даа.	[illegible]
d	We shall return to our homeland, before we **even** have time to realize it.	Нэг л мэдэхэд бид нутагтаа очно доо.	[illegible]
e	The day we have been eagerly waiting for has **finally** come!	Хүсэн хүлээсэн өдөр маань ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
f	I thought you were going to cook! ("What has happened to your talking. 'I will cook.'?")	Хоол хийнэ гэсэн чинь яалаа даа.	[illegible]
g	**But** I've given him money so many times! (reluctant to give again)	Би түүнд олон удаа мөнгө өгсөн дөө.	[illegible]
h	Yesterday he came **at last**. (happy about it)	Тэр өчигдөр ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
i	He **may well** have come yesterday. (circumstancial evidence, e.g. car in front of the house)	Тэр өчигдөр ирж дээ.	[illegible]
j	He *came* yesterday! (relief; talking to oneself)	Тэр өчигдөр ирж дээ.	[illegible]
k	Oh, what shall I do now? (crisis, desperation)	Одоо яаж даа.	[illegible]
l	Take a good look at this!	Чи үүнийг сайн харж даа.	[illegible]
m	**Well then,** sit down. (reluctantly)/**Do** sit down, **please**. (very polite)	Та суу л даа.	[illegible]
n	**Well,** Dorj has come, **yes**. (...but...; no satisfactory result)	Дорж ирсэн байна л даа.	[illegible]
o	It has become late. We **must** go.	Цаг орой боллоо, явахаас даа.	[illegible]
p	I told you many times, **didn't I**? (a bit angrily)	Би чамд олон удаа хэлсэн шүү дээ.	[illegible]
q	**Isn't** that strange! I've told him many times, **haven't I**? (very surprised, stunned)	Би түүнд олон удаа хэлсэн юм даа. Мөн хачин юм даа.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.3 Modal Particle "aa4"

This particle has **four functions**:

1.) It's placed **between** two repeated verbs with a PTS. **Reluctancy** or **indifference** is expressed when using a PTS of the 2nd person (**ex. a**). A **strong request** is expressed when using a PTS of the 1st person (**ex. b**).

2.) After ***nouns or verbs*** *with an NDS* and before "гэ-", it has the meaning '**as such**' (colloquial language; **ex. c-d**).

3.) In colloquial language, this particle is used after a verb with the TTS "-в" (**ex. e-f**) and canexpress a threat (**ex. g-h**). Compare with the PTS "-уузай", which is used for a formal, polite situation.

4.) After **adjectives** and mostly together with "мөн", it expresses enthusiasm (**ex. i-j**). After *long vowels and diphthongs*, this particle needs the inserted English consonant "**y**": "яа, ее" (**ex.k-l**).

a	**Well,** come **then.** (reluctancy) You **may** come. (indifference)	Ир ээ ир.	[illegible]

b	**Come on, come on,** let's go together to town.	Хөөулаа хот руу явъя аа явъя.	[illegible]
c	Life **as such** is very interesting, isn't it?	Амьдрал аа гэж их сонин шүү.	[illegible]
d	Doing business **as such** is no easy job at all.	Наймаа хийх ээ гэ-дэг амар ажил бишээ.	[illegible]
e	Where **on earth** did you go?	Чи хаашаа явав аа?	[illegible]
f	When **actually** did you come from the countryside?	Хөдөөнөөс хэзээ ирэв ээ?	[illegible]
g	**Woe betide you** if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгсөн өө!	[illegible]
h	**Woe betide you** if you tell her about this!	Чи энэ тухай түүнд хэлсэн ээ!	[illegible]
i	**Why, isn't** that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан аа!	[illegible]
j	**Why, isn't** that cute!	Энэ мөн хөөрхөн өө!	[illegible]
k	**Why, isn't** that majestic!	Энэ мөн сүртэй ээ!	[illegible]
l	**Why, isn't** that delicious!	Энэ мөн амттай яа!	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.4 Modal Particle "юм"

This particle is widely used as an **intensifying copula** after a ***noun*** (**ex. a-b**), an ***adjective*** (**ex. c**) or as a particle after a verb with an NDS in TTS-function (**ex. d-h**). In combination with "байна" it indicates, that the thing being said, has just been found out (**ex. g**). In combination with "билээ", it points out that the experience has been made before (**ex. h**).

a	Mongolia **IS** an Asian country!	Монгол улс бол Азийн орон юм.	[illegible]
b	That **IS** the truth!	Энэ үнэн үг юм.	[illegible]
c	My mother is **really** 1.8 meters tall.	Миний ээж 1,8 м өндөр юм.	[illegible]
d	**But** my parents live in the countryside!	Миний эцэг эх хө-дөө амьдардаг юм.	[illegible]
e	Do you have bread, **then**? (surprised)	Танд талх байгаа юм уу?	[illegible]
f	Does he teach in Mongolian, **then**? (surprised)	Тэр монголоор заадаг юм уу?	[illegible]
g	He has no time at all!	Тэр их завгүй байдаг юм байна.	[illegible]
h	The Germans **really do** keep the time very strictly.	Германчууд цагийг их нарийн барим-талдаг юм билээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.5 Modal Particle "мөн"

This particle **always** serves as a **copula,** thus, it always follows a ***noun*** (**ex. a-e**). It's also used in ***fixed expressions*** (**ex. f-g**).

a	I **AM** a foreigner!	Би бол гадаадын иргэн мөн.	[illegible]
b	This **IS** my book!	Энэ миний ном мөн.	[illegible]
c	Is she **really** your younger sister?	Тэр таны төрсөн дүү мөн үү?	[illegible]
d	This is **indeed** the result of his scientific work.	Энэ бол түүний эрдэм шинжилгээний ажлын үр дүн мөн.	[illegible]
e	This is a hotel! (I just found it out)	Энэ зочид буудал мөн байна.	[illegible]
f	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	[illegible]
g	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн л сайхан.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.6 Modal Particle "билээ /лээ"

This particle derived from the **defective auxiliary verb** "bü–" and is, therefore, no true particle. It expresses **statements** that **are remembered to be told** to others. In **ex. f-g,** it serves as a **copula** after a ***noun***. Usually it follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a-c**) or the shortened form of "–жээ" → "–ж" (**ex. d-e**). The particle "лээ" is the shortened form of "билээ" which explains why it is not complying with vowel harmony. It's rarely used, mainly in the modal construction "юм байна лээ" (see page 203).

a	**You know,** two years ago I came to Mongolia.	Би хоёр жилийн өмнө Монголд ирсэн билээ.	[illegible]
b	What was your name **again**?	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	[illegible]
c	**Oh yes, I remember,** he wasn't helping me at that time.	Тэгэхэд тэр надад туслаагүй билээ.	[illegible]
d	**Oh yes,** it has been very interesting in Mongolia.	Монголд их сонирхолтой байж билээ.	[illegible]
e	**Yes, I remember**, when you came to Mongolia, the food situation was very difficult.	Та нарыг ирэхэд Монголд хүнсний зүйл хэцүү байж билээ.	[illegible]
f	**Oh yes,** that's a very good book.	Энэ бол маш сайн ном билээ.	[illegible]
g	**Oh yes**, his wife is a very intelligent person.	Түүний эхнэр их ухаантай хүн билээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.7 Modal Particle "сан[4]"

This particle derived from the defective auxiliary verb "а–" → "асан" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It usually follows after verbs with an NDS and has the following **functions**:

1.) Positive, yearning, sympathetic memories: follows a verb with the past NDS "–сан" or the indefinite present NDS "–даг" (**ex. a-c**).

2.) Subjunctive: strong imaginary desire (see pages 196-197):

A) follows a verb with the future NDS "–х" and often together with "нэг сайхан" (**ex.d-e**). The expression "юмсан" is very similar, and it can be assumed that "юм" dropped. This particle can also be added to **nouns** (**ex. g**).

B) In **complex sentences of the past** (**ex. h-i**), this particle can be added to the main clause **or** to the subordinate clause. In colloquial language, it's often done in both clauses (**ex. h**).

a	When I was in Switzerland, it was **SO** nice!	Намайг Швейцарт байхад их сайхан байсан<u>сан</u>.	[illegible]
b	He's **just** been so very sad! (I'm interested in what has become of him)	Тэр их л уйтгартай байсан<u>сан</u>.	[illegible]
c	**Oh yes,** when I was in Germany, I always met him.	Би Германд байхдаа түүнтэй үргэлж уулзда<u>гсан</u>.	[illegible]
d	**How I 'd like to** eat Khuushuur **again**!	За, нэг сайхан хуушуур идэ<u>хсэн</u>. (...идэх юмсан.)	[illegible]
e	These days I'm very tired. **How I'd like to** sleep well!	Ойрдоо их ядарч байна. Нэг сайхан унта<u>хсан</u>. (...унтах юмсан.)	[illegible]
f	If I **were** rich, I **would** buy a car.	Би баян хүн бол машин ава<u>хсан</u>.	[illegible]
g	If I **had** time, I **would** meet you.	Би завта<u>йсан</u> бол тантай уулза<u>хсан</u>.	[illegible]
h	If I **had** been rich, I **would have** bought a car.	Би баян хүн байсан бол машин авах байса<u>нсан</u>.	[illegible]
		Би баян хүн байсан бол машин авах байсан.	[illegible]
		Би баян хүн байсан<u>сан</u> бол машин авах байса<u>нсан</u>.	[illegible]
i	If you **hadn't** disturbed me, I **would have** finished this work by now.	Чамайг надад саад хийгээ<u>гүйсэн</u> бол би энэ ажлыг дуусгачихаад байх байлаа.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.8 Modal Particle "даг[4]"

This particle has - like "сан" - derived from the defective auxiliary verb "а–" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It expresses that the speaker is quite sure about something and follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a,c-f**) or the future TTS "–на" (**ex. b**). It can be used in combination with other particles, e.g. with "шүү" and expresses then that one **assumes** something for which there is **circumstancial evidence** (**ex. in parentheses**).

a	**I think** it will rain heavily tonight. (Tonight **it's likely to** rain heavily.)	Өнөө шөнө их бороо орох даг (шүү).	[illegible]
b	**I think** he'll come now every minute. (**Probably** he'll come now every minute.)	Тэр гэнэт ороод ирэх дэг (шүү).	[illegible]
c	They'**re likely to** finish their job now.	Тэд нар одоо ажлаа дуусгаж байгаа даг шүү.	[illegible]
d	**Well then**, my father **seems to** have come from the countryside.	Аав хөдөөнөөс ирсэн дэг шүү.	[illegible]
e	**Oh dear, it seems to** be over now.	Одоо өнгөрсөн дөг шүү.	[illegible]
f	Well, that's about what was said. (very colloquial)	Тэгэж хэлж ярьсан юм даг уу даа.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.9 Modal Particle "биз"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Following a verb with the TTS "–на", it expresses **indifference** (**ex. a-b**). Following a verb with an NDS, it could be translated using a **tag question** (**ex. c-e**). As a **copula**, it equates ***nouns*** or ***adjectives*** (**ex. f-g**). Sometimes the final vowel (only evident in Classical Script) **is stressed** (**ex. f**).

a	You will excuse me, **won't you**. I really don't have time.	Та уучилна биз, би үнэхээр завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	-When will he come? -I don't know exactly, **he might** come tomorrow.	–Тэр хэзээ ирэх вэ? –Би сайн мэдэхгүй байна. Маргааш ирнэ биз.	[illegible]
c	Today it's a nice day, **isn't it**?	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байгаа биз дээ?	[illegible]
d	You've met him, **haven't you**?	Та түүнтэй уулзаа биз дээ?	[illegible]
e	You met him yesterday, **didn't you**?	Та өчигдөр түүнтэй уулзсан биз дээ?	[illegible]
f	That's **probably** true.	Энэ үнэн биззэ.	[illegible]
g	You're not Mr. Baatar, **are you**?	Та Баатар гуай биш биз?	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.10 Modal Particle "бий/ вий"

Because this particle is, in Classical Script, **identical with the interrogative particle** "бэ/ вэ", the rule as to when which form is used can be looked up on page 327. When this particle follows a verb with an NDS, it expresses a feeling of **deep understanding (aha-experience; ex. a-e)**. As a **copula**, it equates words (**ex. e**). After a verb with the TTS "~на", it expresses something like an oath to oneself (**ex. f-g**).

a	**I'm sure that** you'll understand my words later.	Миний хэлсэн үгийг чи хожим ойлгох вий.	[illegible]
b	**I'm sure that** a day of rejoicing will come, even though (you) are suffering now.	Одоо зовж байвч жаргах өдөр ирэх вий.	[illegible]
c	**Aha,** that's what he does in my absence.	Тэр намайг эзгүйд ийм юм хийж явдаг вий.	[illegible]
d	**Aha,** he has come to Ulaanbaatar.	Тэр Улаанбаатарт ирээд байгаа юм бий.	[illegible]
e	**Aha,** that's what you used to say.	Чиний хэлдэг тэр вий.	[illegible]
f	**Well then, let's see if he ever** gets money from me again!	Тэр надаас дахиад мөнгө авна вий.	[illegible]
g	**Now see if** you **ever** try that again.	Чи үүнийг дахиад хийнэ вий.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.11 Modal Particle "шив"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Exception is **ex. e**. It either follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a-b**) or ***nouns*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. c-g**). Together with the particle "даа", it expresses **disappointment** and **indifference** (**ex. f-g**).

a	Today, the Germans are playing badly, **I believe.**	Германчууд өнөөдөр муу тоглож байх шив.	[illegible]
b	How nice, they've left, **I believe.**	Тэд нар ашгүй явсан шив.	[illegible]
c	**I think,** this is the book I've read.	Энэ миний уншсан ном шив.	[illegible]
d	**I think** that's my husband's teacher. (to be seen from far)	Энэ манай нөхрийн багш шив.	[illegible]
e	This is **indeed** my husband's teacher. (after he has passed)		
f	**Oh no,** that's my husband's teacher.	Энэ манай нөхрийн багш шив дээ.	[illegible]
g	**Oh no,** that's the film we've already seen.	Энэ үзчихсэн кино шив дээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.12 Modal Interrogative Particle "бол"

This particle is used with question words (**ex. a-c**) and without question words, but together with the interrogative particle "уу/ үү" (**ex. d-e**). It follows verbs with an NDS and expresses that the speaker is **wondering about something** (**ex. a-b**) or that he wants to know the opinion of others, but bears in mind, that the others don't know it themselves (**ex. d-e**).

a	How **might** my son be doing?	Миний хүү яаж явах бол.	Хүүг минь ямар гэмтэй гэжээ гэж бодоо.
b	How **am** (I) **supposed to** do such a thing?/How **on earth** am I going to do such a thing?	Иймэрхүү юмыг яаж хийх бол.	Яаж гэж. Ийм зүйлийг яаж хийх вэ гэж
c	I was constantly thinking about what kind of people I **might** meet once I'd come to Mongolia.	Би Монголд ирээд ямар хүмүүстэй уулзах бол гэж дандаа боддог байсан.	Монгол руу ирсэнээс хойш би ямар хүмүүстэй уулзах вэ гэж бодоо байсан.
d	**I wonder if** there is mutton?	Хонины мах байгаа бол уу?	Хонины мах байна уу гэж би гайхдаг.
e	**I wonder whether** he'll come tomorrow?	Тэр маргааш ирэх бол уу?	Маргааш ирнэ гэж би гайхдаг.

2.3.2.3.13 Modal Conditional Particle "бол"

This particle expresses a **condition** and is very similar to the sVDS "−вал[4]" (see page 161). In case, the sVDS can't be used, this particle is used instead:

- after ***NDS's*** (e.g. past) (**ex. a-g**)
- after ***negation*** (**ex. c-d,j,m**)
- after ***nouns*** (**ex. h-j**)
- after ***adjectives*** (**ex. k**)

It also appears in **subjunctive sentences** (**ex. l-n**).

a	**If** you*'re* sick, have a doctor examine you.	Бие чинь өвдөж байгаа бол эмчид үзүүл!	Өвдөж -- Биеийн хэрэг хэнтэй ярилцах гэж нэрэх гэж
b	**If** that person *knows* Russian well, explain it in Russian!	Тэр хүн орос хэл сайн мэддэг бол чи оросоор тайлбарла!	Гэж гэж нэгэн хүн оросоороо -- Оросоор тайлбарлах гэж нэгэн
c	But **if** *not*, explain it in English!	Хэрэв мэддэггүй бол англиар тайлбарла!	Оросоороо -- Англиар тайлбарлах гэж гэж англиар
d	**If,** then, you*'re not going* today, please come to my home in the evening.	Чи өнөөдөр явахгүй юм бол орой манайд очоорой!	Гэхдээ -- Гэж нэгэн гэрт минь орой ирэх гэж гэж нэгэн
e	Please go **if** you *have eaten* your meal.	Хоолоо идсэн бол яваарай!	Хоолоо гэж нэгэн гэж гарцгаая.
f	**If** the teacher *has come*, I want to go and meet him.	Багш ирсэн бол очиж уулзья!	Багш ирэхэд би нэгэнтэй уулзъя --
g	**If** the shop *is open*, I want to buy meat.	Дэлгүүр онгойсон бол мах авья!	Дэлгүүр онгойхоо гэж би мах гэж.
h	**If** you *have money*, then buy boots for your son.	Чи мөнгөтэй бол хүүдээ гутал аваач.	Мөнгөтэй. Гэж би гутал худалдаж
i	**If** Yondon *has a bicycle*, he'll give it to me.	Ендон дугуйтай бол надад өгнө.	Дугуй. Ендон надад гэж

j	**If** you don't ***have a book***, then please take mine.	Та номгүй бол миний хийг аваач!	[illegible]
k	**If** you're ***small***, it's no use to play volleyball.	Чи намхан бол гар бөмбөг тоглоод нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
l	How ***could*** (he) buy such a coat **if** (he) ***didn***'t have money?	Мөнгөгүй байсан бол ийм дээл яаж авах вэ?	[illegible]
m	**If** you ***hadn't woken*** me up in the morning, I'***d have been*** late for school.	Өглөө чамайг сэрээгээгүй (сэн) бол би хичээлээс хожимдох байжээ.	[illegible]
n	**If** I ***had come*** earlier, I'***d have met*** the teacher.	Эрт ирсэн (сэн) бол багштай уулзах байжээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.14 Comparison of Modal Particles

1.) Single particles:

a	He is an angry person. (neutral statement)	Тэр ууртай.	[illegible]
b	**I tell you,** he is an angry person. (warning)	Тэр ууртай шүү.	[illegible]
c	**But** he is an angry person. (one is worried a bit)	Тэр ууртай даа.	[illegible]
d	**Why, isn't** he an angry person!	Тэр мөн ууртай яа.	[illegible]
e	He **IS** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм.	[illegible]
f	He **is indeed** an angry person. ("мөн" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр ууртай хүн мөн.	[illegible]
g	**Oh yes,** he is an angry person. (I remember it)	Тэр ууртай билээ.	[illegible]
h	**Well, yes,** he is sort of an angry person. ("сан" usually has a positive meaning; therefore better together with "бага зэрэг")	Тэр бага зэрэг ууртайсан.	[illegible]
i	**Oh dear, he seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр нилээд ууртайдаг.	[illegible]
j	He is an angry person, **isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз.	[illegible]
k	**Aha,** he is such an angry person! ("бий" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр тийм их ууртай хүн бий.	[illegible]
l	**I think** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шиг.	[illegible]
m	**I wonder whether** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай бол уу?	[illegible]
n	**If** he is an angry person, I don't want to meet him.	Тэр ууртай бол би түүнтэй уулзмааргүй байна.	[illegible]

2.) Combinations of particles:

a	**I told you,** he is an angry person! (You should have known better)	Тэр ууртай шүү дээ	[illegible]
b	**My,** he **really** is an angry person! (You couldn't know)	Тэр ууртай юм шүү дээ.	[illegible]
c	**Yes,** he **really** is an angry person!	Тэр ууртай юм даа.	[illegible]
d	**He seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм аа даа.	[illegible]
e	**Don't you know**, what angry person he is!	Тэр ямар ууртай билээ дээ.	[illegible]
f	He is an angry person, **then, isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз дээ.	[illegible]
g	He **might** be angry, **you know**.	Тэр уурлах вий дээ.	[illegible]
h	**I think, you know, that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шиив дээ.	[illegible]
i	**Yes indeed,** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм билээ.	[illegible]
j	**But** he isn't an angry person! (Why did he have a heart attack?)	Тэр уургүй юмсан.	[illegible]
k	**I know for sure that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юмдаг.	[illegible]
l	He **seems to be** an angry person, **doesn't he**?	Тэр ууртай юм шиив?	[illegible]
m	**You know,** he **really is** a very angry guy! (for situations, where someone is pleading with words and gesture)	Тэр их ууртай юм байна шүү дээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4 FOCUS PARTICLES

The focus particles **form** together with the word they follow, **the focus of the sentence**. It's this focus that gets the **attention**. Some of these focus particles can **express the relationship** they have to the **contextual statement of the whole sentence**. This statement, resp. the theme of the sentence, is sometimes given without being expressed in words. The focus particles indicate whether the focus of the sentence **include** (= additive) or **exclude** (= restrictive) other things.

Examples:

1.) ***BAATAR*** is ill.	Баатар бол өвчтэй байна.	-> **neutral** focus particle
2.) Also ***Baatar*** is ill.	Баатар ч өвчтэй байна.	-> **additive** focus particle
3.) Only ***Baatar*** is ill.	Баатар л өвчтэй байна.	-> **restrictive** focus particle

Explanation:
In all of the above sentences, Baatar is the focus. But from the **context** it's clear that there are **other people** involved. The question then is: Are the others ill or not? i.e., how is the relationship between Baatar (and the theme 'illness') and the other people? The additive particle "ч" indicates, that there are other ill people besides Baatar. Baatar is included. Such sentences are, therefore, translated as 'also/even'. The restrictive particle "л" indicates that the others are not ill. Baatar is excluded. Therefore, it's translated as 'only, solely, alone'.

We refer at this place to the **publication** of **Mr. Mizuno Masanori** *"Particles in Modern Mongolian: ч, л"*, which tackles the problems of the focus particles in a very detailed manner.

2.3.2.4.1 Neutral Focus Particle "бол"

This particle has 2 functions:

1.) It serves as a **copula** and **subject indicator**. It can be omitted in colloquial language, because the sentence structure is made clear by either intonation or a pause (**ex. a-c**).

2.) Subjects (**ex. d**) or objects (**ex. e-f**) are **emphasized** with it; rarely attributes (**ex. g**).

a	I **am** a Mongolian.	Би (бол) монгол хүн.	[illegible]
b	She **is** a teacher.	Тэр (бол) багш.	[illegible]
c	This **is** very correct.	Энэ (бол) маш зүйтэй.	[illegible]
d	**The Germans** keep strictly to the time.	Герман хүн бол цагийг нарийн баримталдаг.	[illegible]
e	**For the Germans,** time is the most precious thing.	Герман хүнд бол цаг хамгийн чухал зүйл.	[illegible]
f	**To a foreigner** I won't get married.	Би гадаадын хүнтэй бол суухгүй.	[illegible]
g	**The mountain's** summit, **the water's** source, that's the MPRP!	Уулсын бол оргил нь Усны бол боргил нь МАХН билээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2 Additive Focus Particle "ч"

The focus particle "ч" has a **wide usage**. We'll list here the most important functions:

2.3.2.4.2.1 Part of Indefinite Prowords

Most **indefinite prowords** are built with the particle "ч" (**ex. a-c**). Words like "нэг, ганц", etc. often appear together with this particle (**ex. d-e**).

a	It's not allowed to do ***anything***.	Юу ч хийж болохгүй.	[illegible]
b	***Everybody*** understands (that).	Хэн ч ойлгоно.	[illegible]
c	***Nobody*** *will* eat (this).	Хэн ч идэхгүй.	[illegible]
d	I don't have ***any (at all)***.	Надад нэг ч байхгүй.	[illegible]
e	***Not even*** a single person came!	Ганц ч хүн ирээгүй.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2.2 Part of Conjunctions

For **ex. a-b,** see page 301 (the particle emphasizes both parts equally); for **ex. c-d**, see p. 324.

a	**Both, *Dorj* and *Gerel*,** came.	Доржч Гэрэлч ирлээ.	[illegible]
b	(I am) working now like mad. ("... working **neither** having ***sleep* nor *food*.**")	Одоо нойр ч үгүй, хоол ч үгүй ажиллаж байна.	[illegible]
c	***Nevertheless***, it's better to go. ***(Even though it happened this way...)***	Тэгсэн ч явах нь дээр.	[illegible]
d	***Although*** he came, the situation hasn't changed.	Тэр ирсэн ч гэсэн байдал өөрчлөгдөөгүй.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2.3 Part of Modal Constructions

Together with adwords, adjectives and this particle, the following **fixed expression** is formed with the structure being: ***adword + particle*** "ч" ***+ adjective + modal particle***. It is used when talking to oneself and not to communicate something.

a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	[illegible]
b	***Boy,*** the winter of 1991 has been ***very hard indeed.***	1991 оны өвөл тун ч хэцүү байсан шүү.	[illegible]
c	**Oh dear,** he ***really*** did something ***too awful!***	Тэр даан ч (даанч) муухай хэрэг хийж дээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2.4 Expressing "... would ('d) better ..."

In this function, the particle appears together with a verb with a PTS.

a	It has become late. You'd **better** sleep.	Цаг орой боллоо. Та ч унт даа.	[illegible]
b	**I'd better** go.	Би ч явъя. (Би явсан нь дээр.)	[illegible]
c	**He'd better** go.	Тэр ч яваг.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2.5 Expressing "even/ too"

The particle is widely used in this function. A common translation would be 'even/too', but that's not always the most appropriate one. The reader should keep in mind what is written about the **general meaning** of this additive particle. In these examples, **different** parts of speech are the **focus** of the sentences.

Explanation to the examples:

ex. a-f: it depends on the context, whether '**even**' (хүртэл) or '**also**' ("бас") is meant.
ex. g: **double usage** intensifies the meaning
ex. h: often followed by "гэсэн"; this changes the meaning only slightly
ex. i-l: often the particle simply **emphasizes** the focus; in English this would be achieved with intonation
ex. m-n: the particle indicates that something **follows.** The statement is **in relationship** with whatever follows (**additive**); see opposite meaning with particle "л"

a	**Also/Even** ***you*** didn't come today.	Өнөөдөр та ч ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
b	**Also/Even** ***today*** you didn't come.	Өнөөдөр ч та ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
c	**Even/Also** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ ном ч сайн.	[illegible]
d	**Even/Also** ***this*** book is good.	Энэ ч ном сайн.	[illegible]
e	**Even/Also** ***I*** will go.	Би ч явна. (Би бас явна./ Би хүртэл явна.)	[illegible]
f	**Even/Also** ***I*** will go to Mongolia.	Би ч Монголд очно. (Би бас Монголд очно./ Би хүртэл Монголд очно.)	[illegible]
g	***I*** **too** want to go to the 'sum'.	Би ч бас өнөөдөр суман дээр очъё.	[illegible]
h	**Also** ***I*** speak a bit of German.	Би ч гэсэн Германаар жаахан яриадаг.	[illegible]
i	***THIS HERE*** is OK. (there could be a worse situation)	Энэ ч гайгүй.	[illegible]
j	If ***I*** had been there, I would have saved **even** ***Dorj***.	Би ч тэнд байсансан бол Доржийг ч аварч болох байсансан.	[illegible]
k	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good. There are also bad people in our group.	Бид цөмөөрөө ч сайн биш. Манай группэд бас муу хүн байгаа.	[illegible]
l	Listen then, ***I*** know you and ***YOU*** know me.	Би ч таныг танина, та ч намайг танина шүү дээ.	[illegible]
m	I worked ***A LOT***. Now I'm very tired.	Их ч ажиллалаа. Одоо их ядарлаа.	[illegible]
n	I've seen ***SO MANY*** things. ...	Би их ч юм үзлээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.2.6 Comparison of Functions

a	Let ***me*** go **too**.	Би ч явъя.	[illegible]
b	***I*** also want to go.	Би ч бас явъя.	[illegible]
c	**Even *I*** want to go.	Би ч явъя.	[illegible]
d	**Even *I*** want to go.	Би ч хуртэл явъя.	[illegible]
e	***I*'d better** go.	Би ч явъя.	[illegible]
f	**Both, *YOU* and *I*** will go.	Би ч та ч явна.	[illegible]
g	***Everybody*** may go. (***Whosoever***)	Хэн ч явж болно.	[illegible]
h	***Nobody*** may go.	Хэн ч явж болохгүй.	[illegible]
i	***Even if* I *went***, the situation wouldn't change.	Би явсан ч гэсэн байдал өөрчлөгдөхгүй.	[illegible]
j	***Nevertheless,*** I'll go.	Тэгсэн ч би явна.	[illegible]
k	***Boy,*** I ***really*** went to a ***terrific*** town.	Би мөн ч гоё хотод очсон доо.	[illegible]
l	I've gone ***VERY*** far! ...	Би их ч хол явлаа. ...	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.3 Restrictive Focus Particle "л"

The focus particle "л" has a **wide usage** . We'll look into the most important functions.

2.3.2.4.3.1 Functions

Explanations to the examples:

ex. a-f: different parts of speech are the ***focus*** of the sentence
ex. g-l: the particle is part of a **fixed expressions,** using mainly **verbs** with a VDS; sometimes the meanings vary only slightly and make only sense within the whole context.
ex. m-n: meaning 'I for my part ...'/What concerns me ...'
ex. p: compare with ex. 3a-b of the following table
ex. q: compare with ex. 4a-b of the following table
ex. r-t: note the ***construction***: interrogative proword + "л" + "...-в гэж"

a	**Only** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ ном л сайн.	[illegible]
b	**Only *this*** book is good.	Энэ л ном сайн.	[illegible]
c	**Only *I*** want to go./Let ***me*** go **alone**.	(Ганцхан) би л очъе.	[illegible]
d	Today **only *you*** didn't come.	Өнөөдөр та л ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
e	**Only *today*** you didn't come.	Өнөөдөр л та ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
f	The whole day he reads **only *books***. He doesn't do anything else.	Тэр өдөржин ном л уншдаг. Өөр юу ч хийдэггүй.	[illegible]
g	He ***just came*** here, took a book and left.	Тэр энд ирээд л ном аваад явлаа.	[illegible]
h	He ***keeps coming*** to this place.	Тэр энд ирээд л байна.	[illegible]

i	***Well yes,*** he ***has come*** here, ***(but ...)***	Тэр энд ирсэд (д) байна д даа.	[illegible]
j	***I'm still reading*** this book.	Би энэ номыг уншсаар д байна.	[illegible]
k	He ***came here.*** (indifferent attitude)	Тэр энд ирсэн д байна.	[illegible]
l	***Well then, sit down.*** (reluctantly/***Please do sit down.*** (very polite)	Та суу д даа.	[illegible]
m	**Well,** ***I*** can't translate this.	Би д үүнийг орчуулж чадахгүй юм байна.	[illegible]
n	***I* for my part** will leave tomorrow.	Би д маргааш явна.	[illegible]
o	***This,*** **exactly** ***THIS*** (I) probably need.	Энэ, энэ д хэрэгтэй байж магадгүй.	[illegible]
p	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн д сайхан.	[illegible]
q	***So,*** I've seen ***a lot of*** things. (talking is over)	Би их д юм үзлээ.	[illegible]
r	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	Хэн д түүнд мөнгө өгөв гэж.	[illegible]
s	***Now,*** Dorj ***will not*** find ***a single thing.***	Дорж юу д олж ирэв гэж.	[illegible]
t	***It's impossible that*** he ***should*** be a solid person.	Тэр ямар д олигтой хүн байв гэж.	[illegible]

2.3.2.4.3.2 Comparison with Particle "ч."

1a	Let ***ME*** go **too./Even *I*** want to go./***I*'d better** go.	Би ч явъя.	[illegible]
1b	**Only *I*** want to go./Let ***ME*** go **alone./*I* for my part** want to go.	Би д явъя.	[illegible]
2a	***Everybody*** may go.	Хэн ч явж болно.	[illegible]
2b	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	Хэн д түүнд мөнгө өгөв гэж.	[illegible]
3a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	[illegible]
3b	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн д сайхан.	[illegible]
4a	I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (one starts talking)	Би их ч юм үзлээ.	[illegible]
4b	***So,*** I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (theme finished)	Би их д юм үзлээ.	[illegible]
5a	All of us are not good.	Бид цөмөөрөө сайн биш.	[illegible]
5b	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good.	Бид цөмөөрөө ч сайн биш.	[illegible]
5c	***ALL OF US*** are not good.	Бид цөмөөрөө д сайн биш.	[illegible]

2.4 INTERJECTIONS

The interjections (Latin 'interiectio' = 'to throw in between') are a group of words that have **no lexical or grammatical meanings in themselves.** They are not, like other words, integrated in the sentence, but could stand almost anywhere (see Latin name). Usually though, they are placed at the beginning of the sentence or build a sentence on their own. They can be **repeated** or **combined** with other interjections or particles. All true interjections are **passive roots**, i.e., they haven't derived from other words. On the contrary, **other words have derived** from them (e.g. "урай" [hurrah] → "урайла−" [to shout hurrahs]; "ёо" [ouch!] → "ёоло−" [to moan, to groan]). Their **main function** is to **express human feelings**. Furthermore, and that's **very important in Mongolia**, interjections are used in every day life of **animal husbandry**.

2.4.1 Interjections of Emotions

These interjections can be divided into **semantic subgroups.** One and the same interjection can have many different translations, as people are free to use such **abstract** words according to their mood and liking (just imagine the English interjection 'ah' and everything it expresses).
For these reasons, there are **no fixed rules** and the following table is only meant to be a rough guideline. In this table we have also included interjections that are **not true interjections** because they are members of another group of parts of speech (e.g. "яанаа" = verb, "тийм дээ" = proword + particle). But they function like interjections. We have marked such interjections with an asterisk (*). Grammar is not very important when talking about emotions, therefore, we advise the learner not to try to study the **Mongolian grammar** with this chapter!

2.4.1.1 OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

1. Understanding, Exclamation:

аа	

2. Agreement, Pleasure

за	уухай (ухай)	ай даа	аяа
ооо	тийм дээ *	ашгүй дээ *	

3. Pity, Affection, Regret

эвий	хөөрхий *	хай даа	өө
иш	зайлуул *	халаг	

4. Calling; Attracting Attention

хооо	хүүе	хооош	эй

5. Surprise, Astonishment

ооё	хөөх	үгүй *	ер *	оо−ёо−ё	хүүш

6. Difficulty, Despair, Pain

ёо	ёх	яанаа *

7. Laughter, Joy, Happiness

ха ха	гялай	урай	яамай	
хий хий	гоё *	ай хө		

8. Disgust, Dislike, Anger

паа(х)	[illegible]	пөө(х)	[illegible]	пий-пай	[illegible]	пэй	[illegible]
пээ(х)	[illegible]	пүү(х)	[illegible]	ез харлаа *	[illegible]	түй	[illegible]
аа-лаа-лаа	[illegible]	аа-яа-яа	[illegible]	ишш	[illegible]		

9. Feeling Temperatures

халхай	[illegible]	халцгай	[illegible]
тий тий	[illegible]		

10. Displeasure, Disagreement

чааваас	[illegible]	яалаа гэж *	[illegible]	юу гэж *	[illegible]	ээ	[illegible]
балар	[illegible]	үгүй шүү *	[illegible]	яачихав аа *	[illegible]		

11. Causing an Action

май	[illegible]	аа	[illegible]	ишш/чишш	[illegible]	байз *	[illegible]
эй дээ	[illegible]						

12. Fear, Terror

ий	[illegible]	айжий	[illegible]
айжуу	[illegible]		

13. Lullaby

бүүвэй	[illegible]

2.4.1.2 USAGE OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

2.4.1.2.1 Expresssing 'Understanding/Exclamation'

This interjection is very **widely used,** like the English 'ah'. It expresses **understanding** (**ex. a-d**) and all kinds of different **exclamations** (**ex. e-h**). Compare with the interjection "аа" on page 357.

a	**Oh**, I see.	Аа, тийм үү?	[illegible]
b	**Yes**, exactly right!	Аа, яг зөв!	[illegible]
c	**Yes,** that'll do!	Аа, энэ харин болно!	[illegible]
d	**Ah,** I just found out the reason for it.	Аа, одоо сая учрыг нь оллоо!	[illegible]
e	**Oh**, what a beautiful place!	Аа, мөн сайхан газар юм аа!	[illegible]
f	**Oh I see,** what have you just said?	Аа, чи юу гэнэ ээ?	[illegible]
g	**Well**, I don't know!	Аа, бүү мэд!	[illegible]
h	**OK, OK,** I won't forget it!	Аа, аа, яасан ч мартахгүй!	[illegible] [illegible]

2.4.1.2.2 Expresssing 'Agreement/Pleasure'

a	**OK**, let's do that!	За, тэгье!	[illegible]
b	**Enough**, let's stop!	За, болъё!	[illegible]
c	**OK,** that'll do. (could be slightly angrily)	За, за, болно!	[illegible]

d	**There you are!** (could be slightly angrily)	За, хар л даа!	[illegible]
e	**Well**, never mind!	За, тэр ч тийм!	[illegible]
f	**Well then,** let's go to sleep now.	За хөө, одоо унтах уу даа!	[illegible]
g	**That's good**, you came back!	Уухай даа, чи яваад ирэв үү!	[illegible]
h	**Oh good,** you know him, then?	Ухай, ухай, та түү-нийг таньдаг юм уу?	[illegible]
i	**Well**, my child, try hard! (not necessarily one's own child)	Ай даа, хүү минь, хичээгээрэй!	[illegible]
j	**Exactly**, you're right!	Ай даа, таны хэлдэг зөв дөө!	[illegible]
k	**Wow**, that's terrific!	Аяа, үнэхээр сайхан даа!	[illegible]
l	**Oh**, what a beautiful land!	Аяа, ямар сайхан нутаг вэ!	[illegible]
m	**Yeah**, what is it?	Өөе, юу гээв?	[illegible]
n	**Oh**, please take a seat here. (upon seeing the guests, one rejoices)	Өөе, та нар наашаа суу!	[illegible]
o	**That's how it is!** Let's stop talking about this now.	Тийм дээ, одоо энэ тухай ярилцаа дуусгая!	[illegible]
p	**Yes, you're right!** How long then should (I) make (my) old mother suffer!	Тийм дээ, хэдий болтол хөгшин эхээ зовоохов дээ.	[illegible]
q	**Wonderful!** You came back! (wish came true)	Ашгүй дээ, та яваад ирэв үү!	[illegible]
r	**Wonderful!** That's the book I wanted to buy.	Ашгүй дээ, би энэ номыг олж авъя гэж бодож байсан юм.	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.3 Expresssing 'Pity/Affection/Regret'

The interjections of the first group (**ex. a-i**) express a mixture of **affection and pity** and are not used for tragic circumstances. The interjections of the second group (**ex. j-l**) express **deep regret** and are often used in connection with death.

a	**Oh**, my poor son is probably having a hard time! ("ядра–" not in literal meaning)	Эвий, муу хүү минь ядарч яваа байх даа!	[illegible]
b	**Oh**, who on earth would take something like that upon himself! ("what kind of human seed...")	Эвий, ямар хүний үр ингэж яваа юм бол доо!	[illegible]
c	**Bother!** Everything spilled!	Иш, бүр асгачихлаа!	[illegible]
d	**What a shame**! And I trusted him so much! (the meaning of "чааваас" is dominant)	Иш чааваас, би түүнд маш их итгэж байсан юм!	[illegible]

e	**The poor thing**! Some time in the future (she)'ll make it!	Хөөрхий дөө, хэзээ нэг хүний зэрэгт хүрнэ дээ!	[illegible]
f	**Oh, the poor guy,** he's totally wretched! ("ядра–" not in literal meaning)	Хөөрхий зайлуул, тэр их ядарч дээ!	[illegible]
g	**Oh, poor** thing! ("animal")	Хөөрхий амьтан !	[illegible]
h	**Oh, the poor thing,** (she) seems to be homesick.	Зайлуул, гэрээ сана–сан юм шиг байна!	[illegible]
i	**Oh, the poor thing**! Where, then, might his own flock be?	Зайлуул, ижил сүрэг нь хаана яваа юм бол доо!	[illegible]
j	**Oh no**, this can't be true! ("what shall we say then!")	Хай даа, юу гэх вэ дээ!	[illegible]
k	**Oh no,** what a pity, the nice lad!	Ээ халаг, хайран сайхан залуу!	[illegible]
l	**Oh,** what a pity!	Өө, ямар азгүй юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.4 Expresssing 'Calling/Attracting Attention'

Used to call a person far away (**ex. a-d**) and to attract the attention of others (**ex. e-h**). These interjections can be used **interchangeably** among themselves.

a	**Hey!** That's forbidden!	Хөөе, тэгэж болохгүй!	[illegible]
b	**Hey**, come here!	Хөөе , чи нааш ир!	[illegible]
c	**Hey,** Doooorj!	Хүүе, Дорж оо!	[illegible]
d	**Hey**, is Dorj with you?	Хүүе , наана чинь Дорж байна уу?	[illegible]
e	**Hey**, what did I tell you!	Хөөш, би чамд юу гэж хэллээ!	[illegible]
f	**Hey,** don't you have ears! ("Do you have ears?")	Хөөш, чамд чих байна уу!	[illegible]
g	**Hey**, we're over here!	Эй, бид нар энд байна!	[illegible]
h	**Hey**, that's enough of what you're doing there!	Эй, наадах чинь бүр болохоо байлаа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.5 Expresssing 'Surprise/Astonishment'

The interjections in **ex. a-d** are used among good friends and express **slight mockery**.

a	**Wow**! How elegant you've become!	Оое, чи чинь ямар мундаг болчихоо вэ!	[illegible]
b	**Wow**! I'd never thought that you would speak Mongolian that well.	Оое, би чамайг монголоор ийм сайн ярьдаг гэж бодсонгүй!	[illegible]
c	**THAT'S what it is!** Well, then, just take me and go!	Оо–ёо–е, тэгвэл чи намайг аваад яв л даа!	[illegible]

d	**Oh, I see!** Is this then so important to you? (argument)	Оо–ёо–ё, энэ чинь тийм чухал юм уу?	[illegible]
e	**What?** For so many years have you been living in Mongolia?!	Хөөх, та Монголд тийм олон жил амьдарч байгаа юм уу?	[illegible]
f	**Oh my gosh!** How do you live with such a small salary?	Хөөх, ийм бага цалингаар яаж амьдарч байна вэ?	[illegible]
g	**For heaven's sake!** Where on earth did you come from!	Хүүш, чи чинь хаа-наас гараад ирэв ээ!	[illegible]
h	**Oh my gosh!** What are you doing, then?	Хүүш, чи яаж байгаа юм бэ!	[illegible]
i	**I don't believe it!** What a strange guy you are!	Үгүй, чи ямар сонин хүн бэ!	[illegible]
j	**I don't believe it!** YOU're the kind of person who hangs around such a place!	Үгүй ер өө, чи энд ингэж явдаг хүн бий!	[illegible]
k	**Can you believe that!** He's never satisfied, what!	Хөөе ер өө, ямар их даварсан амьтан бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.6 Expresssing 'Difficulty/Despair/Pain'

The interjection "ёх" (**ex. b-c**) can be included into this group when remembering that after **despair, relief** usually follows (**ex. c**).

a	**Ouch!** Someone has stomped on my foot!	Ёо ёо, хөл гишгэчихлээ!	[illegible]
b	He said, "**Ah!**" and stretched several times.	Тэр «ёх!» гэж хэлээд хэдэн удаа суниав.	[illegible]
c	**Oh, well then**, now I'm at ease!	Ёх, ингэж нэг саная амардаг юм байж!	[illegible]
d	**Oh shoot!** I've totally forgotten his order!	Яанаа, би түүний за-хисныг таг мартчихаж!	[illegible]
e	**Dear me!** How terrible this is!	Яанаа, яасан аймаар юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.7 Expresssing "Laughter, Joy, Happiness"

Male laughter (**ex. a-b**); female laughter (**ex. c**); mostly used by children (**ex. d-f**).

a	**Haha,** that's where you've been.	Ха ха, чи чинь энд байсан юм уу?	[illegible]
b	Suddenly he started laughing in a loud voice, "**Haha!**"	Тэр гэнэт «Ха ха!» гэж чанга инээв.	[illegible]
c	**Hihi**, you're such a funny guy, you really are.	Хий хий, ямар сонин амьтан бэ, чи чинь!	[illegible]

d	**Great!** It has been decided that I go.	Гялай гялай, миний явах шийд гарчихжээ!	[illegible]
f	**Yippee,** I'll go with Daddy!	Гоё гоё, би аавтайгаа явна!	[illegible]
g	**Hurrah,** now we've become totally free.	Урай, бид нар одоо бүрэн чөлөөтэй болсон!	[illegible]
h	**Hurrah!** They're coming tomorrow? How nice!	Урай, тэд нар маргааш ирэх үү? Ямар гоё вэ!	[illegible]
i	**Hup, two, three, four,** we are the loyal soldiers of the People's Party, **hup, two, three, four!**	Ай хө, ай хө, ардын намын журамт цэргээ хө хө! (from a song)	[illegible]
j	**Terrific**! I heard that she found a job.	Ямай даа, тэр ажилд орсон гэнэ.	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.8 Expresssing 'Disgust/Dislike/Anger'

In Mongolian, **disgust and pity** are sometimes very close (**ex. c, d, e**). In **ex. j and l,** the predicate dropped, therefore the accusative case suffix is at the end of the sentence.

a	**Ugh**! I didn't imagine that you were such a person!	Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh!** What kind of smell is *that*?	Паах, энэ юуны үнэр вэ?	[illegible]
c	**For heaven's sake!** So you have lost all your money?	Пээ, чи тэгээд бүх мөнгөө алдчихсан уу?	[illegible]
d	**Oh no,** you mean, you haven't met her then?	Пээх, чи түүнтэй тэгээд уулзаагүй хэрэг үү?	[illegible]
e	**Good night**, I've completely forgotten (this).	Пөө, би бүр мартчихаж!	[illegible]
f	**Bloody murder**, what kind of terrible smell is that?	Пөөх, ямар муухай өмхий үнэр вэ?	[illegible]
g	**Ugh,** that can't be!	Пүү, ёстой хэрэг алга аа!	[illegible]
h	**Darn**, what an unreliable guy you are!	Пүүх, чи ч ёстой алдаг нөхөр юм аа!	[illegible]
i	**Ugh,** I can't stand it any longer here! (because of smell, heat, etc.)	Пий-пай, энд ч ёстой байж суухын арга алга аа.	[illegible]
j	**Bother**, now [look] at that! (disappointed, slightly angry)	Ишш, байж байгаа царайг нь ээ!	[illegible]
k	**Darn**, what a wicked, lying beast you are!	Түй, ямар сүнсгүй худал ярьдаг амьтан бэ!	[illegible]
l	**Dear me**! (Look) at this child!	Пэй, энэ хүүхдийн байж байгааг!	[illegible]

m	**Oh boy**! Surely this child is showing us what a 'mess' is!	Аа-лаа-лаа, энэ хүүхэд ч ёстой нэг заваарахыг үзүүлж өгөө шив дээ!	[illegible]
n	**You lucky dog!** You've got it made!	Аа-яа-яа, чи ч ёстой гарч өгч дээ!	[illegible]
o	**Dear Lord!** How on earth did (you) get into such a predicament? (pityful)	Ээ харлаа, яаж яваад ийм юманд орчихдог байна аа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.9 Expresssing 'Feelings of Temperatures'

Such interjections tend to be used **repeatedly**.

a	**Ouch!** I've burned my hand!	Халхай халхай, гар түлчихлээ!	[illegible]
b	**Ouch!** Is this tea hot!	Халцгай халцгай, яасан халуун цай вэ!	[illegible]
c	**Brr!** I'm cold!	Тий тий, хөлдөж үхлээ!	[illegible]
d	**Brr!** What a bad, cool day it is today!	Тий тий, өнөөдөр мөн ч зэвүүн өдөр байна даа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.10 Expresssing 'Displeasure/Disagreement'

a	**Oh heck**, you've grown up that much and still you can't eat properly!	Чааваас, ийм том болчихоод хоолоо ч идэж чадахгүй юм!	[illegible]
b	**Oh bother,** see, all our plans came to nothing!	Ээ балар аа, ингээд хамаг төлөвлөгөө нурлаа шүү дээ!	[illegible]
c	**Why, of course** I'll help you! (slightly angrily)	Яалаа гэж, би чамд туслалгүй яахав!	[illegible]
d	**Really,** you don't need to try to change my mind.	Үгүй шүү, чи намайг яттгаад хэрэггүй!	[illegible]
e	**What's this supposed to be**! That's my best friend, you know!	Юу гэж, тэр чинь миний хамгийн сайн найз байхгүй юу!	[illegible]
f	**What's the matter**! Why should you get so worked up!	Яачихав аа, юундаа уурлаад байгаа юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.11 Expresssing 'Causing an Action'

Different appeals are expressed with one word: 'to take' (**ex. a-b**); 'to wait' (**ex. c-d**; rather impolite); 'to be quiet' (**ex. e**); 'to answer' (**ex. f-h**); 'to take heed to an advice' (**ex. i**).
Compare "aa" in the **ex. f-h** with the interjection "aa" on page 351.

a	**Here**, take this and off with you!	Май, үүнийг аваад хурдан явж уз!	[illegible]
b	**Here**, come on take this!	Май, үүнийг ав ав!	[illegible]
c	**Wait a minute**, I know it!	Байз, би мэдэж байна!	[illegible]
d	**For heaven's sake!** I don't have time. Wait a minute.	Байз, би завгүй байна. Жаахан хүлээж бай.	[illegible]
e	**Hush,** a baby is sleeping in this room.	Чишш (ишш), энэ өрөөнд нялх хүүхэд унтаж байна.	[illegible]
f	Is Dorj there? **Eh**?	Дорж тэнд байна уу, аа?	[illegible]
g	Can we go? **Eh**?	Бид нар явж болох уу, аа?	[illegible]
h	**I beg your pardon**. What did you say?	Аа? Юу гэнэ зэ?	[illegible]
i	**Now listen**, if you're not very careful it's going to be difficult. (warning)	Эй дээ, тун болгоомжтой явахгүй бол хэцүү шүү!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.12 Expresssing 'Fear/Terror'

Such interjections are mainly used when **dealing with children**.

a	**Boo**, a ghost! ("rock ghost")	Ий, хадны мангаа!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh,** how steep it goes down here!	Ий, ямар аймаар эгц уруу вэ!	[illegible]
c	**Hey**, you're not allowed to take this!	Айжий, үүнийг авч болохгүй!	[illegible]
d	**Hey**, this man here is going to tell you off!	Айжуу, айлын аав загнана шүү!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.13 Expresssing 'Lullaby'

a	**Hushaby,** sleep baby sleep! ("..... do sleep! my goggle-eyed seed, do sleep.")	Бүүвэй, бүүвэй, унт даа! Бүлтгэр үр минь, нойрс доо!	[illegible]

2.4.2 Interjections of Husbandry

Because the Mongolians have been engaged in animal husbandry **for centuries**, there are **numerous interjections** that deal with animals. Here is only a selected list:

2.4.2.1. OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF HUSBANDRY

They can be divided into the following groups:
- Interjections to call animals
- Interjections to drive animals
- Interjections of miscellaneous usage

Such interjections could **vary** from 'aimag' to 'aimag' or even from 'sum' to 'sum'.

2.4.2.1.1 Interjections to Call Animals

a	cattle	өөв өөв	[illegible]
b	camels	тоор тоор	[illegible]
c	cattle and camels	хаа	[illegible]
d	cattle and camels	хөч	[illegible]
e	goats	зуу зуу	[illegible]
f	goats	цүү цүү	[illegible]
g	goats	чээг чээг	[illegible]
h	mares	гуруй	[illegible]
i	horses	хайя хайя	[illegible]
j	horses	хөөр хөөр	[illegible]
k	sheep and lambs	хоолбой хоолбой	[illegible]
l	chickens	гүд гүд	[illegible]

2.4.2.1.2 Interjections to Drive Animals

a	horses	чү чү	[illegible]
b	dogs	туу туу	[illegible]
c	dogs	жов жов	[illegible]
d	goats	чаа чаа	[illegible]
e	cattle and camels	хөж хөж/ хаа хөж	[illegible]

2.4.2.1.3 Interjections of Miscellaneous Usage

a	used when milking the sheep (so that they are quiet) or to cause the ewes to feed the lambs	тойг тойг	[illegible]
b	used to separate sheep and lambs, cows and calves.	гүүргий гүүргий	[illegible]
c	used to stop a cart	тар тар	[illegible]
d	used to cause camels to lie down	сөг сөг	[illegible]
e	used to cause camels to get up	хөөг	[illegible]
f	used to cause camels to urinate	шээр шээр	[illegible]

Part IV:

Syntax

Chapter 1:
Kinds and Types of Sentences
pages 360-366

Chapter 2:
Relationship between Words
pages 367-370

Chapter 3:
Relationship between Parts of a Sentence
pages 371-388

Chapter 4:
Relationship between Clauses
pages 389-400

Chapter 5:
Punctuation
pages 401-405

In this Part IV, we talk about **syntax** (Greek 'syntaxis' = 'composition, order'), which is how to compose a sentence. This part is **very important** for English speaking people, as Mongolian and English languages **differ a great deal** in syntactic structure. Without a basic knowledge of the Mongolian syntax, it's impossible to learn the language properly.

Important:
Right at the beginning we have to give **a clear definition of 'predicate'**, as different languages define this term very differently.

In English, the predicate is defined as

'the *part of a sentence* which makes a **statement about the subject**'

My son *is ill.*
Does your father *work in the garden today?*
I *really like him a lot.*

This means that object, attributes and adverbials are **all part of the predicate**.

In Mongolian, however, the definition is different (like the German definition):

☞ **The predicate is 'the** *verbal part of a sentence* **which makes the statement about the subject'**

My son *is* ill.
Does your father *work* in the garden today?
I really *like* him a lot.

This means that objects, attributes and adverbials are **NOT part of the predicate**, but **closely linked** with it, as is the subject.

As you read on, **please keep this definition in mind**!

1. KINDS AND TYPES OF SENTENCES

1.1 Kinds of Sentences

Each and every verbal statement has **its intention**. The speaker wants to declare, ask, command, threaten, praise, shout, etc. Based on the intention, we can divide the sentences into **different kinds**. Each of these sentences **can also be negated** by using **negative particles** (see pages 328ff) and **verbs which** usually take an **NDS** (see pages 139ff).

1.1.1 Declarative Sentences

Affirmative sentences are built with verbs with a *TTS* (**ex. a-c**). **Negative sentences** take verbs with an **NDS** (**ex. e-g**). **A period** (brit. 'full stop') follows the declarative sentences.

a	We came to Mongolia in 1993.	Бид нар 1993 онд Монголд ирсэн.	[illegible]
b	My younger sister read that book.	Миний дүү тэр номыг унших.	[illegible]
c	The day after tomorrow I will go to the countryside.	Би нөгөөдөр хөдөө явна.	[illegible]

d	Tomorrow I want to buy a jacket at the shop.	Би маргааш дэлгүүрээс хүрэм авах гэсэн юм.	[illegible]
e	He hasn't come.	Тэр ирээгүй.	[illegible]
f	I won't come to the meeting tomorrow.	Би маргааш хуралд очихгүй.	[illegible]
g	He didn't eat his meal.	Тэр хоолоо идсэнгүй.	[illegible]
h	This is not a teacher.	Энэ – багш биш.	[illegible]

1.1.2 Interrogative Sentences

Affirmative interrogative sentences are built in two ways:
- with ***interrogative particles*** (see pages 327-328) and verbs with an **NDS**: **ex. a-f**
- with some ***modal particles***: (see pages 335ff): **ex. g-h**

Negative sentences are built with verbs with an **NDS** (**ex. i-j**).
Interrogative sentences close with a **question mark.**

a	Where are you going now?	Чи одоо хаачих вэ?	[illegible]
b	What, then, is there?	Тэнд юу байгаа юм бэ?	[illegible]
c	What time today will (we) gather?	Онөөдөр хэдэн цагт цугларах юм (бэ)?	[illegible]
d	Can you speak Mongolian?	Та монгол хэлээр ярьж чадах уу?	[illegible]
e	My son, did you eat your meal?	Хүү минь, хоолоо идсэн үү?	[illegible]
f	Do you need this book?	Энэ ном танд хэрэгтэй юу?	[illegible]
g	When *might* he have met his friend?	Тэр найзтайгаа хэзээ уулзсан бол?	[illegible]
h	You'll come, *won't you*?	Чи ирнэ биз?	[illegible]
i	Why aren't you going?	Чи яагаад явахгүй байна вэ?	[illegible]
j	Didn't you go to the meeting?	Чи хуралд очсонгүй юу?	[illegible]

1.1.3 Imperative Sentences

Imperative sentences are mostly built in the following two ways:
- with verbs with a **PTS** (p. 175ff): **ex. a-e**
- with the help of ***modal constructions***: **ex. f-i**

Negative sentences can be built in both ways (**ex. e,g,i**) and also differently (**ex. j-k**).
Imperative sentences are closed with an **exclamation mark**.

a	Go now quickly!	Та нар одоо түргэн явцгаа!	[illegible]
b	Go there, **please**!	Чи тийшээ яваарай!	[illegible]
c	**Please** read me this paragraph!	Надад энэ сэдвийг уншиж өгөөч!	[illegible]
d	Go away from here!	Эндээс явж үз!	[illegible]

e	**Please** do not go!	Чи биттгий яваарай!	[illegible]
f	Tomorrow, I ***need*** to have a tooth pulled!	Би маргааш шүдээ авахуулах хэрэгтэй!	[illegible]
g	You ***shouldn't*** do that!	Чи тэгэх хэрэггүй!	[illegible]
h	I ***must*** learn Mongolian!	Би монгол хэл сурах ёстой!	[illegible]
i	You ***mustn't*** go there!	Чи очих ёсгүй!	[illegible]
j	Entrance forbidden!	Орохыг үл зөвшөөрнө!	[illegible]
k	Woe betide you if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгөв өө!	[illegible]

1.1.4 Exclamatory Sentences

Exclamatory sentences are used to express different emotions. They are mostly built in these three ways:

- like declarative sentences, but having a different ***intonation*** (the vowel of the last syllable of the sentence is pronounced ***long*** **(ex. a-d;** note that in **ex. d,** the last vowel is evident only in Classical Script; when emphasized, it shows in Cyrillic too)
- having the form of interrogative sentences with ***question words*** **(ex. e-g)**
- with ***particles*** **(ex. h)**

Exclamatory sentences could be **negative (ex. d,g)**. They end with an **exclamation mark**.

a	The car CAME!	Машин ирлээ шүү!	[illegible]
b	Sambuu already LEFT!	Самбуу аль хэдийн явсан!	[illegible]
c	I wanted to go too!	Би ч гэсэн явах юмсан!	[illegible]
d	I'm **NOT** a liar!	Би худал ярьдаг хүн бишээ!	[illegible]
e	***When*** will my younger brother have become like that!	Миний дүү хэзээ ийм болж чадах вэ!	[illegible]
f	***What*** a beautiful horse!	Ямар сайхан морь вэ!	[illegible]
g	***What*** an unlucky person I am!	Би ямар азгүй хүн бэ!	[illegible]
h	***Why***, isn't that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан аа!	[illegible]

1.2 Types of Sentences

There are different types of sentences depending on their **form or structure**. A sentence is a complicated thing and can be looked at from **different perspectives**. In syntax, the fourth perspective below is the **most important** one:

Overview:

1. Has the sentence **one or two components?**	**Sentence with one component:** Одоо хүйтэрч байна. (only predicate)	**Sentence with both components:** Дүү минь хичээлдээ явсан. (subject and predicate)
2. Is the sentence **complete or incomplete**?	**Incomplete sentence:** Байна.	**Complete sentence:** Миний ах гэртээ байна.
3. Is the sentence **short or extended**?	**Short sentence:** Ээж дуулж байна. (without object, attribute, adverbial)	**Extended sentence:** Ээж өглөө бүр гал тогооны өрөөнд дуулдаг.
4. Is the sentence **simple or combined**?	**Simple sentence:** Би даарахгүй байна. (one predicate)	**Combined sentence:** Би даарч байвч гэртээ харьмааргүй байна. (two predicates)

1.2.1 One-Component and Two-Component Sentences

Each sentence has two major components: **predicate and subject**. Sometimes though, one or the other component could be omitted out of **pragmatic or stylistic** reasons.

1.2.1.1 ONE-COMPONENT SENTENCES (ELLIPSIS)

When either the subject or the predicate component is omitted, it's called 'ellipsis' (meaning: 'omission'). There are three subgroups:

- Sentence without subject component
- Sentence without predicate component
- Word-Sentences

1.2.1.1.1 Sentences without Subject Component

In the following cases, the subject can be left out:

1.2.1.1.1.1 Subject and Predicate are one and the same

This is **not often** the case, usually with verbs in regard to the weather like "бороошиг" (to rain), "зунши-" (to become summer), "ганши-" (to be a draught), "хүйтрэ-" (to become cold), "дулаара-" (to become warm), etc. In English, the ***correlate "it"*** takes the place of the omitted subject.

a	*It* rained a lot in summer.	Зундаа их бороошив.	[illegible]
b	Now *it* gets colder.	Одоо хүйтэрч байна.	[illegible]

1.2.1.1.1.2 Generalization

The subject is omitted because it can't be defined. Such one-component sentences are widely used in **proverbs** and **sayings**. The verbal predicate takes an **NDS**.

a	To lead somebody by the nose. ("to hold a snake by someone's hands")	Хүний гараар могой бариулах.	[illegible]

b	Don't count your chickens before they're hatched. ("to take off the boots without having seen water; to tuck up the skirt without having seen a mountain")	Ус үзээгүй байж гутал тайлах. Уул үзээгүй байж хормой шуух.	[illegible]
c	– to have 10 hourly lessons each week	–Долоо хоног бүр арван цагийн хичээл хийх.	[illegible]

1.2.1.1.1.3 Context allows Subject to be Omitted

The subject may be omitted when a verb suffix (**PTS**) indicates who the subject is (**ex. a-b**), or when the whole context of the conversation is clear without mentioning the subject. Omitting the subject is a very common thing to do in Mongolian, but impossible in English. That's why we sometimes, in the translation, give a subject in parentheses (**ex. c**), use either the neutral 'one' (**ex.d**) or the 2nd person singular 'you' (**ex. e**), or even put the sentence into the passive voice (**ex. f**).

a	Labor for your motherland!	Эх орныхоо төлөө хөдөлмөрлөгтүн! (2nd person)	[illegible]
b	Let's learn a foreign language!	Гадаад хэл сурцгаая! (1st person)	[illegible]
c	When (**people**) carry heavy loads, (**they**) become strong.	Хүнд ачаа өргөвөл хүчтэй болно.	[illegible]
d	When **one** runs up a mountain, **one** gets tired quickly.	Уул өөд гүйхлээр хурдан ядардаг.	[illegible]
e	When **you** start a work, **you** have to finish it.	Ажил эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
f	Tomorrow, two letters **will be sent** with Bat.	Маргааш Батаар хоёр захиа явуулна.	[illegible]

1.2.1.1.2 Sentences without Predicate Component

Such sentences appear often in poems, titles, newpaper heading, etc. They are a **widely used stylistic element** of language.

a	On a day in the fall 1991.	1991 оны намрын тэр нэг өдөр.	[illegible]
b	A single yurt in the midst of Gobi's snowy steppe.	Цасан талын дунд говийн ганц айл.	[illegible]

1.2.1.1.3 Word-Sentences

There aren't too many words which can build a sentence on their own: "за, үгүй, мөн, биш, тийм, зүйтэй, худлаа, зөв, буруу, нээрээ, магадгүй, болзошгүй," etc.

a	Right.	Тийм ээ.	[illegible]
b	Maybe.	Магадгүй.	[illegible]
c	Indeed.	Нээрээ.	[illegible]

1.2.1.2 TWO-COMPONENT SENTENCES

These are simple subject + predicate sentences which form the normal sentence pattern. Since they are discussed throughout the book, we will not do so here.

1.2.2 Complete and Incomplete Sentences

Sometimes, it's important to talk in detail and make complete sentences. Other times, it's more important to be brief and therefore make incomplete sentences.

1.2.2.1 COMPLETE SENTENCES

From a structural point of view, this is the normal sentence, but it **isn't used for dialogue**!

a	-Is your older brother here? **-My older brother is here.**	–Ах чинь байна уу? –Манай ах байна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We're going in this car.**	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? –Энэ машинаар бид нар явна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]

1.2.2.2 INCOMPLETE SENTENCES

In everyday **dialogues**, it's not common to make whole sentences. But such incomplete sentences may not be taken out of their context. Contrary to the one-component sentence, this incomplete sentence could be turned into a complete sentence (see examples above).

a	-Is your older brother here? **-Yes.** ("**Is.**")	–Ах чинь байна уу? –Байна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We** (are).	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? –Бид нар.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
c	-Have you eaten? **-Yes.** ("**Eaten.**")	–Та хоолоо идсэн УУ? –Идсэн.	- [illegible] - [illegible]

1.2.3 Short and Extended Sentences

Depending on whether the sentence is **made up of only the main parts of the sentence**, or is extended with other parts, we speak of a 'short' or an 'extended' sentence.

1.2.3.1 SHORT SENTENCES

A short sentence is made up of **subject** and ***predicate*** only.

a	Father *came*.	Аав ирсэн.	[illegible]
b	Mother *asked*.	Ээж асуусан.	[illegible]

1.2.3.2 EXTENDED SENTENCES

An extended sentence is made up of subject, predicate *, and one or more **assistant parts** of the sentence, such as an ***object***, **adverbial** or **attribute**.

a	How do you knead *the dough for the 'buuz'*?	Чи буузны гурил яаж зуурдаг вэ?	[illegible] [illegible]

b	The window **of that room** has **nice** curtains.	Тэр өрөөний цонх гоё хөшигтэй.	[illegible]
c	Please bring ***me*** **2 kg of** ***potatoes from the shop***.	Та надад дэлгүүрээс хоёр кило төмс авчраарай.	[illegible]
d	Will you go ***to the violin concert*** **at the** ***Music and Dance Middle*** **School today**?	Та өнөөдөр Хөгжим Бүжгийн Дунд Сургууль дээр хийлийн концерт үзэх үү?	[illegible]

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

1.2.4 Simple and Combined Sentences

In syntax, the division into simple and combined sentences is the most crucial. That's why a whole chapter (pages 389ff) is given to these two forms of sentences. Here, we will just mention them briefly and not talk about special features.

1.2.4.1 SIMPLE SENTENCES

A simple sentence is made up of **not more than one *subject* and predicate part** each. In other words, a simple sentence doesn't have two or even more subjects or predicates.

a	***My older sister*** **went** together with me.	Миний эгч надтай хамт явав.	[illegible]
b	**Do *you*** **know** the name of that mountain?	Чи тэр уулын нэрийг мэдэх үү?	[illegible]

1.2.4.2 COMBINED SENTENCES

The combined sentence is made up of **more than one subject or predicate part**. There are the following possibilities:

- one **predicate part**, more than one ***subject part***: **ex. a-b** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- one ***subject part***, more than one **predicate part**: **ex. c-d** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- more than one **predicate** and more than one ***subject part***: **ex. e-f**

a	***Father and I*** **went** to the central post office.	Аав бид хоёр төв шуудан руу явсан.	[illegible]
b	***Many scholars and actors*** **took part** in this meeting.	Энэ уулзалтад олон эрдэмтэд ба жүжигчид оролцсон.	[illegible]
c	***I*** **returned** home and **took** a shower.	Би гэртээ хариад усанд орсон.	[illegible]
d	***He*** **likes hunting** and **fishing**.	Тэр ан хийж загас барих дуртай.	[illegible]
e	***Father*** **is reading** the newspaper and ***mother*** **is cooking** a meal.	Аав сонин уншиж, ээж хоол хийж байна.	[illegible]
f	Although ***it**** **is** very **cold** outside, ***I'm*** **not cold**. (* this subject doesn't show in Mongolian)	Гадаа маш хүйтэн боловч би даарахгүй байна.	[illegible]

2. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN WORDS

The smallest unit of a sentence is a word. Therefore, syntax really begins where single words are connected. This can be done in various ways, either in a **parallel relationship** (the words are equal, no subordination = **coordinate words**), or in an **unparallel relationship** (the words are unequal, there is subordination = **subordinate words**).

2.1 COORDINATE WORDS

As mentioned before, such coordinate words are of equal importance and none is subordinate to the other.

2.1.1 Free Coordinate Words

'Free coordinate words' are a group of words that are free in the way they are combined with each other. The first word can be combined with different words.

2.1.1.1 WITHOUT CONJUNCTION WORDS

Many of the Mongolian 'coordinate words' can be combined without using a conjunction word. That's usually impossible in English, where we need the ***conjunction 'and'***. Different parts of speech can be combined: adjectives (**ex. a,c**), nouns (**ex. b,d**), verbs (**ex. e**). The latter always take a *cVDS* (pages 157ff).

a	This is a **big, brown** table.	Энэ бол том бор ширээ.	[illegible]
b	I bought **a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс ном, дэвтэр авлаа.	[illegible]
c	She did this job **quickly *and* qualitatively well.**	Тэр энэ ажлыг хурдан чанартай хийжээ.	[illegible]
d	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with **meat*, milk tea *and* (other) milk products.** (*one or more big pieces of boiled meat)	Тэр биднийг монгол маягаар суутэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээгээр дайлав.	[illegible]
e	The child ran towards me, **screaming *and* waving.**	Хүүхэд над руу хашгираан, даллан гүйлээ.	[illegible]

2.1.1.2 WITH CONJUNCTION WORDS

As mentioned above, a conjunction word is not always needed. If it's used anyway (like in **ex. a**), then it is meant to emphasize something.
The following word categories could serve **as *conjunction words:***
a) conjunctions: **ex. a,b**
b) numerals: **ex. b**
c) plural suffix "нар": **ex. c**
d) reflexive words (see p. 263): **ex. d**
e) so called 'listing words' like "тэргүүтэн, зэрэг, сэлт, гэх мэт": **ex. e-f**

a	This table is **big *and* brown.**	Энэ бол том бөгөөд бор ширээ.	[illegible]
b	**Father *and* I bought a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	Аав бид хоёр дэлгүүрээс ном болон дэвтэр авлаа.	[illegible]

c	**Dorj, Baatar**, *and others* went to the countryside.	Дорж Баатар нар хөдөө явсан.	[illegible]
d	***Everyone*, teachers *and* students**, helped with this job.	Багш оюутан бүгдээрээ энэ ажилд оролцов.	[illegible]
e	He speaks many languages, *like* **English, German,** *etc*.	Тэр англи герман зэрэг олон хэлээр ярь даг.	[illegible]
f	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with *many things starting with* **milk tea, meat** *and* **milk products.**	Тэр биднийг монгол маягаар сүүтэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээ тэргүүтнээр дайлав.	[illegible]

2.1.2 Bound Coordinate Words

'Bound coordinate words' are a group of words which are combined with each other in a fixed form. So the **order cannot be changed** and the different words **cannot be exchanged with synonyms**. Such 'bound coordinate words' mostly have **a new lexical meaning** (see page 57). Verbs that appear as bound coordinate words take a *çVDS* **(ex. c-d)**.

a	I live in an **apartment**. ("dwelling, living quarters")	Би орон сууцанд амьдардаг.	[illegible]
b	The **whole society** talks about this. ("above and below")	Энэ тухай дээр доороуй ярьж байна.	[illegible]
c	I **changed** my clothes. (to wear chang*ingly*)	Би хувцаа сольж өмссөн.	[illegible]
d	I **received** a gift. ("to take wait*ingly*")	Би бэлэг хүлээн авсан.	[illegible]

2.2 SUBORDINATE WORDS

When a group of words are **structurally linked** with each other and **one of the words dominates**, they are called 'subordinate words'. According to the dominating word we talk about **noun dominated words** and **verb dominated words**. Some subordinate words are linked together with a suffix or a postposition (= indirect subordinate words), others are linked without any help (= direct subordinate words). 'Linked' doesn't imply that the words have to be adjacent (see **ex. b**). In English, **prepositions** play an important role in building such subordinate words.

Example in English:

a) **Father's coat** *hangs in the wardrobe*.

b) Yesterday, I *gave* **my brother** *an apple*.

Father's coat = noun dominated words
to hang in the wardrobe = verb dominated words
my brother = noun dominated words
to give an apple = verb dominated words
to give my brother = verb dominated words

2.2.1 Direct Subordinate Words

Although there is **no visible conjunction** to link the words, we **need a suffix** to show that there is a **subordination**. Such an invisible suffix is called a **zero-suffix** and marked "**–ø**". Compare with II:1.2.2.

Direct subordinate words are always made up of *adwords*:

- *adword* **to noun:**
  noun as adword, with n-stem (**ex. a-b**; see also page 58)
  noun as adword, **without n-stem** (**ex. c-d**)
  proword as adword (**ex. e-f**)
  numeral as adword (**ex. g-h**; see also page 236)
  adverb as adword (**ex. i-j**)
- *adword* **to adjectives** (**ex. k-l**; see also page 219f)
- *adword* **to verbs** (**ex. m-n**; see also page 221ff)

a	My father made a ***wooden* table.**	Миний аав модон ширээ хийсэн.	[illegible]
b	Have you seen my ***gold* ring?**	Та миний алтан бөгжийг харсан уу?	[illegible]
c	They built a ***rail*way.** ("***iron*way**")	Тэд нар төмөр зам байгуулсан.	[illegible]
d	My friend lives in the **city *of Ulaanbaatar*.**	Найз минь Улаанбаатар хотод амьдардаг.	[illegible]
e	I read ***this* book.**	Би энэ номыг уншсан.	[illegible]
f	I need ***such* a pencil.**	Надад тийм харандаа хэрэгтэй байна.	[illegible]
g	At what time will you come? ("***how many* o'clock**")	Чи хэдэн цагт ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
h	I have ***two* sons.**	Би хоёр хүүтэй.	[illegible]
i	In summer, we set up our yurt on an ***elevated* place.**	Бид зун дээр газар гэрээ барьдаг.	[illegible]
j	The **mountain *over there*** is covered with mist.	Тэртээ уулаад манан татаж байна.	[illegible]
k	The mother sewed a shirt from ***light* blue** cotton material.	Ээж цагаан цэнхэр даавуугаар цамц оёсон.	[illegible]
l	For me, this was a ***brand* new** thing.	Энэ бол миний хувьд цоо шинэ зүйл байсан.	[illegible]
m	He screamed ***loudly*.**	Тэр чанга хашгирав.	[illegible]
n	I will ***always* remember** her.	Би түүнийг ямагт дурсдаг.	[illegible]

2.2.2 Indirect Subordinate Words

Indirect subordinate words are linked with a **suffix** or a **postposition**. 2/3 of all subordinate words belong to this category.

2.2.2.1 WITH SUFFIXES

These could serve as linking *suffixes*:
- all CS's (page 78ff) except nominative: **ex. a-d**
- the NDS's (p. 139ff): **ex. e**
- the AwDS's (p. 151ff): **ex. f**
- the sVDS's (p. 156ff): **ex. g**

a	I took **the man's book**.	Би ахын номыг авсан.	[illegible]
b	My son is **good *in* mathematic**.	Миний хүү тоонд сайн.	[illegible]
c	She **did** this **job** quickly.	Тэр энэ ажлыг хурдан хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	Mongolia is **rich *in* livestock**.	Монгол орон малаар баян.	[illegible]
e	I met **the person *who* came** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн хүнтэй уулзсан.	[illegible]
f	My father is **a person *that one would like* to have as a friend.**	Миний аав бол ханилмаар хүн.	[illegible]
g	I **understood** this sentence ***as soon as*** (I) **read** (it).	Би энэ өгүүлбэрийг уншмагц ойлгосон.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2 WITH POSTPOSITIONS

For more information about postpositions, see page 282ff.

a	**I shall wait** for you ***until* five o'clock.**	Би таныг таван цаг хүртэл хүлээнэ.	[illegible]
b	What **do** you **know *about* this person**?	Та энэ хүний талаар юу мэдэх вэ?	[illegible]
c	He speaks **German *besides* English**.	Тэр англиас гадна германаар яриаг.	[illegible]

3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PARTS OF A SENTENCE

The different parts of a sentence are **related** to each other. Depending on the relationship we distinguish:

- **main parts of a sentence**; subject and predicate* (they dominate)
- **assistant parts of a sentence**; object, attribute, adverbial (they are dominated)
- **independent parts of a sentence**; e.g. interjections (they have no structural relationship)
- **coordinate parts of a sentence**; a combination of at least two parts of a sentence (see 3.2)

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

3.1 Parts of a Sentence

In Mongolian, the different parts of a sentence are divide into 'main' and 'assistant' parts.

3.1.1 Main Parts of a Sentence

The main parts of a sentence are **subject and predicate**.

3.1.1.1 SUBJECTS

The subject is usually in the **nominative case**, which has a **zero-suffix (–ø)**. From the contextual structure, the subject is linked to the predicate. Both parts **complement** each other.

3.1.1.1.1 Question Words for Subjects

With the question words "хэн? юу?" ***(who or what?)*** we ask for the subject.

a	–***Who*** came? –**Father** came.	–Хэн ирсэн бэ? –Аав ирсэн.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
b	–***What*** is going on here? –**A meeting** is taking place.	–Энд юу болж байна вэ? –Цуглаан болж байна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]

3.1.1.1.2 Omission of Subjects

Quite often, the subject is **omitted** in Mongolian because it is clear from the context who is meant. In English, this is not possible! Compare with page 363.

a	(**We/I/They**) came to Mongolia three years ago.	Монголд ирээд 3 жил болж байна.	[illegible]
b	Although (**I**) tried very hard, (**I**) wasn't successful.	Маш их хичээсэн болов ч амжсангүй.	[illegible] [illegible]

3.1.1.1.3 Parts of Speech as Subjects

All kinds of parts of speech can serve as **subjects:** nouns (**ex. a**), prowords (**ex. b**), adjectives (**ex. c**), numerals (**ex. d**), verbs with an NDS (**ex. e**).
Note: In order to use an adjective or a numeral in a **noun function**, the ***CbP*** "нь" is needed. (see page 106 and **ex c,d** below).

a	**Baatar** didn't come.	Баатар ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
b	**She** is playing violin.	Тэр хийл тоглож байна.	[illegible]

c	**The good** *(one)* has to sing.	Сайн нь дуулах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
d	**The three** *(of them)* came from Germany.	Гурав нь Германаас иржээ.	[illegible]
e	**This pupil** went on vacation.	Энэ сурагч амралтаараа явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.4 Subject Indicators/Markers

Very often, *a word* (**ex. c**), *a particle* (**ex. b,e**), *a suffix* (**ex.f**) *a CbP* (**ex.d**) **or** *a comma* (**ex. a**) accompanies the subject as a subject indicator or subject marker. This is important because Mongolian proper names have meanings and, thus, often get mixed up with other parts of speech, e.g.:

- confusing subjects with objects (**ex. a-c**)
- confusing subjects with attributes (**ex. d-f**)

The sentences in parentheses are what would be understood without the indicator.

a	Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг, жимс түүв.	[illegible]
b	*Only* Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг л жимс түүв.	[illegible]
c	A woman (= "a wife *person*") came, followed by her child. (Someone came, followed by his wife and child.)	Эхнэр хүн хүүхдээ дагуулан ирэв.	[illegible]
d	*Our* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун маань хашаа барьжээ.	[illegible]
e	*Even* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун ч хашаа барив.	[illegible]
f	The wrestlers took their wrestling jackets. (Someone took his strong wrestling jacket.)	Бөхчүүд зодгоо авав.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.5 Complements of Subjects

When the subject is **equated to** a noun or an adjective, it is important **to use subject indicators** to avoid confusion, emphasize the subject, or clarify the meaning of the sentence. Such indicators could be:

"бол" (**ex. a-b**), "гэдэг нь" (**ex. c**), the **CbP's** (**ex. d**), **comma** or **dash** (**ex. e;** in talking, there is a pause) or the **CbP** "чинь" in function of a **focus** particle (**ex. f-g**). If "чинь" in this function is combined with the particle(s) "шүү (дээ)", the focusing is even stronger.

The sentence in parentheses is what would be understood without the indicator.

a	This **is** a doctor. (This person's doctor.)	Энэ бол хүний эмч.	[illegible]
b	**I** am rich.	Би бол баян.	[illegible]
c	The *so called* 'buuz' is a meat dish.	Бууз гэдэг нь махтай хоол юм.	[illegible]
d	*My* father is tall.	Аав минь өндөр.	[illegible]
e	Mongolia – an Asian country.	Монгол – Азийн орон.	[illegible]
f	My younger brother, **you know**, is an intelligent man.	Миний дүү чинь ухаалгаг хүн.	[illegible]
g	His homeland, **you know**, is far away.	Түүний нутаг чинь хол шүү дээ.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2 PREDICATES

The predicate (Latin 'praedicare' = 'to declare loudly') means 'the declared thing'. Please read the explanations on page 360. Here is the definition of a Mongolian predicate again:

> ☞ **The predicate is 'the** *verbal part of a sentence* **which makes the statement about the subject'**

3.1.1.2.1 Question Words for Predicates

With the question words "яа–? юу хий–?" ***(to do what?)*** we ask for the predicates. Notice that objects and adverbials are part of the answer, as they are very closely linked to the predicate.

a	-***What happened*** to you yesterday? -I **had** a head**ache**.	–Чи өчигдөр яасан бэ? –Миний толгой өвдсөн.	- [illegible] ·· - [illegible]
b	-***What did*** you ***do*** yesterday? -I **lay** on my bed.	–Чи өчигдөр юу хийсэн бэ? –Би орондоо хэвтсэн.	- [illegible] ·· - [illegible]
c	-***What do*** you ***do*** when you have a headache? -I **take** medicine **and lie down.**	–Толгой өвдөхөд та яадаг вэ? –Би эм уугаад хэвтдэг.	- [illegible] ·· - [illegible]
d	-***What will happen*** if Bat comes tomorrow? -**Give** him this book, **please.**	–Маргааш Батыг ирвэл яах вэ? –Чи түүнд энэ номыг өгөөрэй.	- [illegible] ·· - [illegible]

The predicates can be **divided into two groups** according to their structure:

3.1.1.2.2 Simple Predicates

Simple predicates are predicates that are made up of ***a full verb***, which takes a ***TS*** (see page 175ff)

3.1.1.2.2.1 One Full Verb

a	***Please write*** this other letter quickly.	Та нөгөө захиагаа хурдан бичээрэй.	[illegible] ··
b	***Go up*** the stairs!	Шатаар гар! (=ø)	[illegible]
c	Yesterday, he ***took*** an exam.	Тэр өчигдөр шалгалт өгчээ.	[illegible] ··
d	I ***get up*** early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог.	[illegible] ··

3.1.1.2.2.2 Compound Full Verb

The first full verb takes a *cVDS*, the second verb a **TS**.
As mentioned on pages 157-158, such combinations give **new meanings** (in English **one** new verb).

a	I **bought** a new car. ("to take trad*ingly*")	Би шинэ машин худалдаж авлаа.	[illegible] ··
b	He **vouched** for me. ("to guarantee confirm*ingly*")	Тэр намайг батлаж даасан.	[illegible] ··

3.1.1.2.3 Compound Predicates

Compound predicates are predicates that are made up of **two or more verbs**: the **first one** is a **full verb** expressing the lexical meaning and the other words could be **auxiliary, modal, or modifying verbs** which have only a grammatical function. That gives **three subgroups**:

3.1.1.2.3.1 Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs

The tense is expressed with the help of the **auxiliary verbs.** The **full verb** always takes a VDS, the last of the auxiliary verbs a ***TS*** **(ex. a-b)**. In a general tense context (e.g. professions, character traits, etc.) the auxiliary verb functioning as a copula **may be dropped**. Then we get something like a '**noun-predicate**', which is the actual Mongolian name. In English we call such phenomena 'complements'. Compound predicates can be made up of **different parts of speech (ex. c-e)**.

a	I **was writing** a letter yesterday at this time.	Би өчигдөр өдийд захиа бичиж байсан.	[illegible]
	I'**m writing** a letter now.	Би одоо захиа бичиж байна.	[illegible]
	I **shall be writing** a letter at this time tomorrow.	Би маргааш өдийд захиа бичиж байх болно.	[illegible]
b	I **was** a teacher.	Би багш байсан.	[illegible]
	I (**am**) a teacher.	Би багш (байна).	[illegible]
	I **shall be** a teacher.	Би багш байх болно.	[illegible]
c	The wind **was** quite **strong**. (= adjective)	Салхи нилээд хүчтэй байлаа.	[illegible]
d	I **am** the director of this school. ("The director of this school **is me**.")(= pronoun)	Би захирал нь би байна.	[illegible]
e	"The lives of the neighbors (**are**) **one.**" (= numeral) meaning: neighbors must help each other.	Айл хүний амь нэг. (proverb)	[illegible]

3.1.1.2.3.2 Full Verbs and Modal Verbs/Constructions

The **modal verb** "чада–" is always used with a full verb taking the *cVDS* "–ж/–ч" **(ex. a-c)**; the **modal constructions** , due to their noun origin, demand a verb with the *NDS*"–х" **(ex. f-g)**. With the **auxiliary verbs,** either mood **(ex. b)** or tense is expressed **(ex. e, g)**.

a	**Are** you **able to do** this?/ **Can** you **do** this?	Та үүнийг хийж чадах уу?	[illegible]
b	I **would have been able to do** this./I **could have done** this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадах байсан.	[illegible]
c	I **was able to do** this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсан.	[illegible]
d	I **need** money. ("Money is with necessity to me.")	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
e	I **needed** money.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй байсан.	[illegible]
f	I **like playing** chess. ("I'm with pleasure in playing chess.)	Би шатар тоглох дуртай.	[illegible]

g	When I was small, I **didn't like playing** chess.	Би бага байхдаа шатар тоглох дургүй байсан.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2.3.3 Full Verbs and Modifying Verbs

The first verb is always a **full verb**, which expresses the lexical meaning and takes a cVDS. The second verb is one of the **modifying verbs**. Tense (**ex. b,e**) is expressed with **auxiliary verbs**.

a	**May** we **go** now? ("**Will** we **become going**?")	Бид нар одоо явж болох уу?	[illegible]
b	If you had come early, we **would have been allowed to go**.	Та нар эрт ирсэнсэн бол, бид нар явж болох байсан.	[illegible]
c	He **brought** me to the airport.	Тэр намайг онгоцны буудал дээр гаргаж өгсөн.	[illegible]
d	I **wrote down** everything he said. ("I **took writingly** ...")	Би түүний хэлснийг бүгдийг бичиж авав.	[illegible]
e	He **had** always **told** me about this. ("He **was** talk*ingly* **giving**.")	Тэр надад энэ тухай ярьж өгдөг байсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2 Assistant Parts of a Sentence

Assistant parts of a sentence are **objects, attributes, and adverbials**. With these assistant parts, **extended sentences** are built. Short sentences do not contain assistant parts. Objects and adverbials are dominated by predicates; attributes by the word they are attributed to.

3.1.2.1 OBJECTS

The object (Latin 'obicere' = 'to throw against') is placed 'against' the subject. Mongolian objects **need either a case suffix** (6 to choose from; nominative is reserved for the subject; genitive builds attributes) **or a postposition**. The verb (rarely an adjective in predicate function) determines which case or which postposition is needed (see Chapter 2 of the Appendix).

Example in English:
to ask **whom**? (accusative); to give **to whom**? (dative); to take **from whom** (prepositional case); to believe **in whom**? (prepositional case); to go **through what**? (prepositional case), etc.
The examples on the next page show the **different possible objects**. Sometimes there could be an **overlap with adverbials** (**ex. k**):

dative-locative (**ex. a-b**)
instrumental (**ex. g-h**)
postpositional object (**ex. m-n**)
accusative (**ex. c-d**)
comitative (**ex. i-j**)
ablative (**ex. e-f**)
directive (**ex. k-l**)

3.1.2.1.1 Parts of Speech as Objects

All **concrete parts of speech,** with the exception of adverbs, can build objects: nouns (**ex. a,c,g,h,k,l,n**); adwords (**ex. d,j**); prowords (**ex. b,e,f,i,m**).

a	I love **my mother**. ("I am with love **for my mother.**")	Би ээждээ хайртай.	[illegible]
b	Let me help **you**!	Би чамд туслая!	[illegible]
c	I bought **a book** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс ном авав.	[illegible]
d	Gerel took **two**.	Гэрэл хоёрыг авсан.	[illegible]
e	I'd like to ask **her**. ("from her")	Би түүнээс асуумаар байна.	[illegible]
f	**What** are you afraid **of?**	Та юунаас айдаг вэ?	[illegible]
g	I had **my older sister** make me a 'deel'.	Би эгчээрээ дээл хийлгэсэн.	[illegible]
h	Are you going to call? ("to talk **through the wire**?")	Та утсаар ярих уу?	[illegible]
i	We were supposed to meet **him**. ("to meet **with ...**")	Бид нар түүнтэй уулзах ёстой байсан.	[illegible]
j	To be friends with the good is moonshine. (proverb) ("If you are friends **with the good** it is moonshine.")	Сайнтай нөхөрлөвөл сарны гэрэл.	[illegible]
k	I have to get **to the market**.	Би зах руу очих хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
l	The children ran **towards their mother.**	Хүүхдүүд ээж рүүгээ гүйв.	[illegible]
m	Did you think **about this**?	Чи үүний тухай бодсон уу?	[illegible]
n	He talked in detail **about his work.**	Тэр ажлынхаа талаар дэлгэрэнгүй ярив.	[illegible]

The objects are in close relationship to the verbs expressing the predicate. So, according to the twofold division of the verbs in **transitive** and **intransitive** verbs, we can divide the objects into **direct** and **indirect objects**.

3.1.2.1.2 Direct Objects

Transitive verbs always demand **a direct object**, which is in the accusative case (**ex. a**). On pages 87-89, we explained thoroughly when the suffix can be dropped (**ex. b,f;** zero- suffix). In general statements, the direct object can sometimes be omitted (**ex. c**). When the **object is unknown** in a specific situation, the word "юм" (=thing) must be used. To omit the unknown object (as in English) is not possible (**ex. d**). Transitive verbs can also have ***indirect objects*** beside their direct objects (**ex. e-f**).

a	Who *chopped* **this wood**?	Энэ модыг хэн хагалсан бэ?	[illegible]
b	I can *chop* **wood**.	Би мод хагалж чадна.	[illegible]
c	He *reads* fast.	Тэр хурдан уншдаг.	[illegible]
d	*Have* you *eaten* (**something**)?	Чи юм идсэн үү?	[illegible]
e	I *made* **this table** *from* ***wood***.	Би энэ ширээг модоор хийсэн.	[illegible]

f	I *had* **my older sister** *make* me **a 'deel'**.	Би эгчээрээ дээл хийлгэсэн.	[illegible]

3.1.2.1.3 Indirect Objects

Intransitive verbs can't have direct objects, but only **indirect objects** which could be in any case other than accusative, nominative, or genitive (**ex. a-b**). Often, *transitive verbs* have an indirect object as well as a ***direct one*** (**ex. c-d**). On pages 78-100, there are many examples for different objects with their CS's.

a	Let me *help* **you**.	Би чамд туслая.	[illegible]
b	Please *talk* **with me** on the phone **about this**.	Над [illegible] ууний тухай утсаар яриарай.	[illegible]
c	*Did* you *give* **her** ***a gift***?	Чи түүнд бэлэг өгөв үү?	[illegible]
d	I *have* **a Monglian teacher** *teach* me ***English***.	Би монгол багшаас англи хэл заалгадаг.	[illegible]

3.1.2.2 ATTRIBUTES

Attributes (Latin 'attribuere' = 'to allot to') are **not independent parts of a sentence**; they depend on another part of the sentence. Characteristics, sizes, colors, masses, materials, etc are expressed with attributes (compare with page 212ff). They usually appear together with *subjects* (**ex. a-c,f,k**) or *objects* (**ex. b,e,g,i,j**), rarely with *adverbials* (**ex. h**). Attributes are often found in complements of subjects (**ex. d,f,k**). They are placed **right before** the word they describe.

Attributes are built in the following ways:
- **with adwords**
  - nouns with n–stem serving as adjectives (**ex. b-c**)
  - nouns with derivational suffix "–тай" serving as adjectives (**ex. d**)
  - adjectives with adwords (**ex. e-f**)
  - numerals (**ex. i-j**)
- **with prowords** (**ex. g-h**)
- **with nouns in genitive case** (**ex. g**)
- **with the CbP's** (**ex. b**)
- **with verbs taking an NDS** (**ex. k**)

Attributes could be made up of several words (**ex. e-g,j**).

a	Don't you like **red** *flowers*?	Танд улаан цэцэг таалагддаггүй юу?	[illegible]
b	**My** *father* made a **wooden** *chair*.	Аав минь модон сандал хийсэн.	[illegible]
c	Have you ever traveled by *ship*? ("**water** *vessel*")	Та усан онгоцоор явж үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
d	A rider came. ("*person* **with horse**")	Морьтой хүн ирэв.	[illegible]
e	This is **too unnecessary** a *work!*	Энэ дэндүү дэмий ажил юм.	[illegible]
f	You gave a **totally wrong** *answer*.	Чи тэс буруу хариу өгсөн.	[illegible]
g	**That** *student* is **my younger brother's** *friend*.	Тэр оюутан бол миний дүүгийн найз.	[illegible]

h	Read **these** *books*!	Эдгээр номыг уншаарай!	[illegible]
i	The evening party went on for **two** *hours*.	Үдэшлэг хоёр цаг үргэлжлэв.	[illegible]
j	Do you have **many Mongolian** *friends*?	Та олон монгол найзтай юу?	[illegible]
k	Will you go to the countryside **next** *year*?	Та ирэх жил хөдөө явах уу?	[illegible]

3.1.2.3 ADVERBIALS

Adverbials, (Latin 'ad verbum' = 'to the word/verb'), describe the **conditions under which the action, which is expressed in the sentence, takes place**. It is **difficult to draw a line between adverbials and adverbial clauses**. Sometimes in English, an adverbial has to be translated with an adverbial clause. This matter is not yet resolved in Mongolian studies. For the student it's not a very important problem. So we won't get involved in it here.

Adverbials can be divided into the following **semantic groups**:
1.) Local adverbials (place)
2.) Temporal adverbials (time)
3.) Modal adverbials (mode; way of behaving)
4.) Causal adverbials (reason)
5.) Final adverbials (intention)
6.) Conditional adverbials (condition)
7.) Concessive adverbials (concession)

3.1.2.3.1 Local Adverbials

Local adverbials can be divided into **three subgroups** :

3.1.2.3.1.1 Showing Place

Such adverbials answer the **question** "хаа(на)?"(**where?**)
They can be **built** like this:
• with adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
• with nouns with ***dative-locative CS's*** (**ex. c**)
• with ***postpositions*** (**ex. d**)

a	The children are playing **outside**.	Хүүхдүүд гадаа тоглож байна.	[illegible]
b	**Here** is a hotel.	Энд зочид буудал байна.	[illegible]
c	I live ***in*** **a 3 room flat.**	Би 3 өрөө байранд амьдардаг.	[illegible]
d	He's lying ***on*** **the bed**.	Тэр орон дээр хэвтэж байна.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.1.2 Showing Direction

Such adverbials answer the **questions** "хаашаа? хаанаас? хаа хүртэл?" **(to where? from where? until where?).**
They can be **built** like this:
- with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
- with *declined* nouns: - with ablative CS's (**ex. c**)
  - with dative-locative CS's (**ex. d**)
  - with postpositions (**ex. e**)

a	Don't run **around**, please!	Ийш тийш биттгий гүйгээрэй.	[illegible]
b	He came ***from* the north.** (meaning "Russia" most of the time)	Тэр хойноос ирсэн.	[illegible]
c	My son came ***from* (his) school.**	Миний хүү сургуулиасаа ирсэн.	[illegible]
d	When did he come ***to* Mongolia?**	Тэр Монголд хэзээ ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
e	We went by car ***as far as* Darkhan.**	Бид машинаар Дархан хүртэл явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.1.3 Showing Local Movement

Such adverbials answer the **question** "хаагуур?" **(where abouts? which way?).**
They can be **built** like this:
- with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
- with *declined* nouns: instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
  postpositions (**ex. d**)

a	The birds are flying **above**.	Шувуу дээгүүр нисч байна.	[illegible]
b	**In the north,** someone is going ***around*** driving his cattle.	Хойгуур мал туусан хүн явж байна.	[illegible]
c	Many people promenade ***along* the bank of the Tuul river.**	Туул голын хөвөөгөөр олон хүн зугаалж байна.	[illegible]
d	TheTuul river flows ***south of the* city Ulaanbaatar.**	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хотын урдуур урсдаг.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.2 Temporal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "хэзээ? хэдийд? хэдийгээс? хэдий хүртэл?" **(when? about when? from when on? until when?)**

They show two things:

3.1.2.3.2.1 Showing Moment of Action

They can be **built** like this:
- with temporal adverbs (**ex. a**)
- with *declined* nouns: dative-locative CS's (**ex. b**)
  instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
  postpositions (**ex. d-e**)
- with some of the proword-conjunctions (**ex. f**)

a	He never has time. ("**always** no time")	Тэр үргэлж завгүй байдаг.	[illegible]

b	Please come ***at*** **4 o'clock.**	Чи 4 цагт ирээрэй.	[illegible]
c	I left ***in*** **the light of the dawn.**	Би үүрийн гэгээгээр мордсон.	[illegible]
d	Drink this medicine ***after*** **the meal**.	Чи энэ эмийг хоолны дараа уу.	[illegible]
e	Do you go to church ***every*** **Sunday**?	Чи бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр цуглаанд явдаг уу?	[illegible]
f	**Then** we both left.	Тэгээд бид хоёр явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.2.2 Showing the Beginning or the End of an Action

- Beginning: adverb or noun with *ablative CS's* (**ex. a-b**) or with *postpositions* (**ex. c**)
- End: with *postpositions* (**ex. d-e**)

a	I'm on vacation ***from*** **tomorrow *onward*.**	Би маргаашаас амарна.	[illegible]
b	I will start my job ***on*** January **1st**. ("... enter my job ***from*** ...")	Би 1 сарын нэгнээс ажилдаа орно.	[illegible]
c	***From*** **now *on*** I won't make this mistake again. ("***from*** **this *on***...")	Үүнээс хойш би энэ алдааг давтахгүй.	[illegible]
d	He was ill ***until*** **recently**.	Тэр саяхан болтол өвчтэй байсан.	[illegible]
e	***By*** **the end of this year**, this work might be finished.	Энэ оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.3 Modal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яаж? ямар байдалтай? хир зэрэг?" **(how? in what way? to what degree?)** and thus express **different ways** in which actions happen.
They can be **built** like this:
- with modal adverbs (**ex. a**)
- with adjectives + *instrumental-CS's* (**ex. b**)
- with *cVDS's* (**ex. c**)
- with *sVDS's* (**ex. d-e**)
- with the postpositions "мэт, шиг, адил" (**ex. f**)

a	A meal **bubbles** on a fire. ("boils '**por por**'")	Гал дээр хоол пор пор буцлана.	[illegible]
b	He had a cold smile. ("He smiled **coldly**.")	Тэр хүйтнээр инээсэн.	[illegible]
c	He came running. ("He **runningly** came.")	Тэр гүйж ирлээ.	[illegible]
d	Everyone gave a thunderous applause. ("All people clapped the hands ***until*** **it thundered.**"")	Бүх хүмүүс нижигнэтэл алга ташив.	[illegible]
e	He sat into his car, **laugh*ing***.	Тэр инээсээр машиндаа суув.	[illegible]
f	He stands ***like*** **a victorious hero**. ("having-won-hero")	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.4 Causal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яагаад? ямар учраас? юунаас? яаснаас?юунд?" (**why? for what reason? due to what?**) and thus explain the reason of the action.
They can be **built** like this:
- with *NDS's + dative-locative-CS's* (**ex. a-b**)
- with the conjunction "~аас бол~", whereas "бол~" could also be dropped (**ex. c-d**)
- with the *cVDS* "~аад" (**ex. e**)
- with some of the *proword-conjunctions* (**ex. f**)
- with the *instrumental CS's* (**ex. g**)

a	**Out of anger** his face became red. ("*in* his having become angry")	Тэр уурласандаа царай нь улайв.	[illegible]
b	She cried **from being afraid**. ("*in* her being afraid")	Тэр айхдаа уйлсан.	[illegible]
c	***Because*** he **had been cold**, he got the flu.	Тэр даарсныас болж ханиалгасан.	[illegible]
d	***Because of*** **him** we were late.	Түүнээс болж бид хожимдсон.	[illegible]
e	**I was** so **afraid**, I couldn't move. ("**I was afraid *and then*** couldn't move.")	Би айгаад хөдөлж чадаагүй.	[illegible]
f	***For this reason*** I couldn't go.	Тийм учраас би явж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
g	***Due to*** **the fire catastrophe,** we became homeless.	Түймрийн гайгаар бид орон гэргүй болов.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.5 Final Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яах гэж? яахаар? юуны тулд?" (**what for? to do what?**) and thus show the **purpose** or the **intention** of an action. Usually such sentences have an **adverbial clause**, but some could be considered as final adverbials.
They can be **built** like this:
- with the *sVDS* "~хаар" (**ex. a**)
- with the postposition "~ын тулд" (**ex. b**)
- with the construction "~х гэж" (**ex. c**)

a	Dorj returned home ***in order to*** **rest**.	Дорж амрахаар гэртээ харьсан.	[illegible]
b	I came to Mongolia ***to*** **study the Mongolian language**.	Би монгол хэл сурахын тулд Монголд ирсэн.	[illegible]
c	I came to Mongolia ***to*** **study the Mongolian language**.	Би монгол хэл сурах гэж Монголд ирсэн.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.6 Conditional Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яавал? ямар бол? юу бол? хэн бол?" (**under what condition?**) and thus show the **conditions** under which an action happens. But all such sentences form, strictly speaking, an **adverbial clause**.

a	**Otherwise** I'll go, you know!	Эс тэгвэл би явна шүү.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.7 Concessive Adverbials

They answer the question "**despite who or what?**" and explain why the action happens anyway. There are only a few such adverbials, as it is **common to make an adverbial clause**.

a	**Nevertheless,** I did invite him.	Хэдий тийм болов ч би түүнийг урьсан.	[illegible]
b	**Nevertheless,** I did give him money.	Тэгсэн ч би түүнд дахиад мөнгө өгсөн.	[illegible]
c	**Nevertheless,** he didn't take a leave.	Гэсэн ч гэсэн тэр чөлөө аваагүй.	[illegible]

3.1.3 Placement of the Parts of a Sentence

Taking the following two example sentences, we want to **derive a few basic rules** for the placement of the parts of a sentences:

Example A (simple): Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.

Би	өчигдөр	гэртээ	хичээлээ	сайн	давтсан.
I	yesterday	at home	my lesson	well	reviewed
subject	temporal adv.	local adverbial	object	modal adv.	predicate

Example B (more complicated): Each Sunday, in his own home, my (older) brother does the English language lesson very seriously together with his Japanese friends.

Миний ах	бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр	өөрийн хөө гэрт	япон найз нартайгаа	англи хэлний хичээл	маш шаргуу	хийдэг.
My (older) brother	each Sunday	in own home	with his Japanese friends	the English language lesson	very seriously	does
subject with attribute	temporal adverbial with attribute	local adverbial with attribute	indirect object with attribute	direct object with attribute	modal adverbial with attribute	predicate

1. ☛ The predicate is always at the end.

Examples: (predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	He went to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явав.	[illegible]
c	He didn't go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He has to go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
e	Did he go to the shop?	Тэр дэлгүүр явсан уу?	[illegible]

2. ☛ The subject is always before the predicate.

Examples: (subjects/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	I was ill.	Би өвчтэй байсан.	[illegible]
c	He made a table.	Тэр ширээ хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	The sun rose.	Нар мандлаа.	[illegible]

e	Is he ill?	Тэр өвчтэй байна уу?	[illegible]

3. ☛ The object is always between subject and predicate.

Examples: (subjects/*objects*/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed *my lesson* well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	I bought *a book*.	Би ном авлаа.	[illegible]
c	Bat is making *a table*.	Бат ширээ хийж байна.	[illegible]
d	May I go there *with my friend*?	Би найзтайгаа очиж болох уу?	[illegible]
e	I couldn't write *that other letter*.	Би нөгөө захиаг бичиж чадаагүй.	[illegible]

4. ☛ The attribute is always in front of the word it describes.

Examples: (*attributes*/describing word:
ex. b: subject; **ex. c:** predicate; **ex. d:** object; **ex. e:** attribute; **ex. f:** adverbial)

a	*Each Sunday*, in *his own* home, *my (older)* brother does the *English language* lesson *very* seriously together with his *Japanese* friends.	Миний ах бүтэн сайн ядер бүр ээрийнхээ гэрт япон найз нартайгаа англи хэлний хичээл маш шаргуу хийдэг.	[illegible]
b	*My* (older) brother left.	Миний ах явсан.	[illegible]
c	He is Mongolian. ("*Mongolian* person.")	Тэр бол монгол хүн.	[illegible]
d	Take *this* pen.	Чи энэ үзгийг ав.	[illegible]
e	I have a *brand* new car.	Надад цоо шинэ машин бий.	[illegible]
f	You learned Mongolian *very* well.	Чи монгол хэлийг маш сайн сурсан.	[illegible]

5. ☛ The modal adverbial is always in front of the predicate.

Examples: (modal adverbial/predicate)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	This student learned well.	Тэр оюутан сайн сурав.	[illegible]
c	He drives his car carefully.	Тэр машинаа бодгоомжтой жолооддог.	[illegible]
d	He stands like a victorious hero.	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	[illegible]

6. ☞	**The temporal adverbial is always before the local adverbial.**

Examples: (temporal adverbial/*local adverbial*)

	Yesterday *at home*, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
a	We learn Mongolian *at home* every day.	Бид өдөр бүр гэртээ монгол хэл сурдаг.	[illegible]
b	I bought a book *at the shop* yesterday.	Өчигдөр би дэлгүүрээс ном авлаа.	[illegible]
c	The whole evening, she reviewed her lesson *in the library*.	Тэр бүхэл орой номын сан хичээлээ давтав.	[illegible]

3.2 Coordinate Words as Parts of a Sentence

3.2.1 Characteristics

When talking about the parts of a sentence, 'coordinate words' refer to a group of words which have the **same function** in the sentence or in other words, parts of a sentence which are made up of more than one component. It could be further explained as a **merging of two or more simple sentences** which have common elements. (compare with page 367)

Example:
Peter goes to school. **Susan** goes to school. **I** go to school. = **Peter, Susan, and I** go to school.
The common element (to go to school) links the three subjects which otherwise have no relationship together.

Coordinate words as parts of a sentence can belong to **two groups**:

1.) Coordinate words which are of *one* semantic group.
Such coordinate words can be built with all five parts of a sentence.
e.g. Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг. He speaks **English** and **German**.
(both **indirect objects** are **languages** = one and the same semantic group)

2.) Coordinate words which are of *different* semantic groups.
Such coordinate words can be built with objects, attributes and adverbials.
e.g. Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг. He talks with me ***in English***.
(the **two indirect objects** belong to **different** semantic groups)

The following table shows what is possible and impossible when building coordinate words as part of a sentence:

	coordinate words of *one* semantic group:	**coordinate words of *different* semantic groups:**
1. order	**is free:** Тэр герман, англиар ярьдаг. Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг.	**is bound:** Миний хоёр ном энд байна. (wrong: Хоёр миний ном ...)
2. grammatical form (e.g. suffixes)	**is the same:** Тэр германаар ярьдаг. Тэр англиар ярьдаг.	**is different:** Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг.
3. conjunction	**is possible:** Тэр англиар ба германаар ярьдаг.	**is impossible**
4. question word	**one is sufficient:** Юугаар ярьдаг вэ?	**more than one is needed:** Хэнтэй/ юугаар ярьдаг вэ?

5. grammatical suffix	**is needed with last word only:** Тэр герман (−ø) , англиар ярьдаг.	**is needed with every word:** Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг.
6. reflexive words or listing-word	**is possible:** Тэр англи, герман зэрэг хэлээр ярьдаг. Баатар, Болд бид бүгд явсан.	**is impossible**
7. enumerating intonation	**is possible:** Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг. (Comma or pause in intonation)	**is impossible**

3.2.2 Coordinate Subjects

Coordinate subjects can be **built like this**:
- with reflexive words like "бүгд, цем" (**ex.b**)
- with listing-words like "дервүүл"
- with cardinal numerals like "дөрөв" (**ex. a**)

Note that a ***declension*** is only needed with the last word (e.g. plural suffix in **ex. b**).

a	**Bold, Baatar, Dorj, and Tulag** went to the lesson.	Болд, Баатар, Дорж, Тулга дөрөв хичээлдээ явав.	[illegible]
b	During the National Holiday **everybody, herdsmen, workers and officials** take a rest.	Үндэсний баяраар малчин, ажилчин, албан хаагчид цем амардаг.	[illegible]

3.2.3 Coordinate Predicates

Sentences with coordinate predicates have a **common subject**. They are **built like this**:
- with *cVDS's* (**ex. a**)
- with the *sVDS* "−саар" (**ex.b**).

The last predicate expresses tense (**ex. a-c,e**) or person (**ex. d**). The ***auxiliary verbs*** follow the last predicate (**ex. c,f**), but could, if need be, follow the other predicates as well (**ex. e**).

a	Dorj **watered** his sheep **and** gathered his horses.	Дорж хонио услаад, адуугаа хураав.	[illegible]
b	I ***kept*** **think*ing*** that I would meet him, (but) I couldn't.	Би түүнтэй уулзана гэж бодсоор ьмжсаншгүй.	[illegible]
c	Mother ***is*** **cook*ing*** the meal and sing*ing* a song.	Эзэж хоол хийж дуу дуулж байна.	[illegible]
d	Please **make** dinner ***and then*** clean your room.	Чи хоол хийгээд ерөөгөө цэвэрлээрэй.	[illegible]
e	I ***was*** **help*ing*** you, ***am*** **help*ing*** you, and *will* help you.	Би танд тусалж байсан, тусалж ч байна, туслаж ч болно.	[illegible]

3.2.4 Coordinate Objects

Coordinate objects of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate objects of **different semantic groups**: **ex. c**: *dative-locative*; instrumental accusative

a	**Cattle, horses, camels, sheep, and goats** are the five kinds of livestock.	Үхэр, адуу, тэмээ, хонь, ямааг таван хушуу мал гэнэ.	[illegible]
b	We came together **with Süren, Khishigt, and Ochir.**	Бид Сүрэн, Хишигт, Очир нартай хамт ирэв.	[illegible]
c	I sent money ***to her* by post.**	Би түүнд шуудангаар мөнгө явуулсан.	[illegible]

3.2.5 Coordinate Attributes

Coordinate attributes of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate attributes of **different semantic groups**: (**ex. c**: Note the **order** on page 214)

a	(They) built **wooden, stone, and brick** houses in rows.	Мод, чулуу, туйлгуун байшингуудыг эгнүүлэн барьжээ.	[illegible]
b	I have bought an **explanatory**, a **multi-language, and** an **orthografic** dictionary at the book shop.	Би номын дэлгүүрээс тайлбар толь, олон хэлний толь, зөв бичгийн толь худалдаж аваад байна.	[illegible]
c	I saw **the man's four fat, brown** horses.	Би ахын дөрвөн тарган бор морийг харсан.	[illegible]

3.2.6 Coordinate Adverbials

Coordinate adverbials of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b** (suffix with the last adverbial)
Coordinate adverbials of **different semantic groups**: **ec. c** (suffix always needed: causal adv. "to"; temporal adv. "yesterday" (–ø); local adv. "from Germany".

a	I lived in **England, Mongolia, and Switzerland.**	Би Англи, Монгол, Швейцарьт амьдарч байсан.	[illegible]
b	**Day** and **night, morning** and **evening**, (they) constantly remember with a longing.	Өдөр шөнө, өглөө үдэшгүй мөрөөдөн санагалзана.	[illegible]
c	My friend came **yesterday** from **Germany** to take part in a meeting.	Миний найз хуралд оролцохоор өчигдөр Германаас ирсэн.	[illegible]

3.3 Independent Parts of a Sentence

Independent parts of a sentence:
- are **not integrated** into the sentence structure
- have **no syntactic relationship** to the rest of the sentence
- **appear freely** anywhere in the sentence (beginning, middle, end)
- are **separated** from the rest of the sentence by **commas**

Example:

Ах минь, чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ?	**My brother,** why won't you go, then?
Яагаад, ах минь, чи явахгүй юм бэ?	Why, then, **my brother,** won't you go?
Чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ, ах минь?	Why won't you go, then, **my brother**?

There are **four subgroups**:
- Attention parts
- Inserted parts
- Interjections
- Response parts

3.3.1 Attention Parts

They can be **built** like this:
- using the particle "аа" (**ex. a**)
- using the СЪР "минь" (**ex. b**)
- using special names to call animals (**ex. c**)
- using interjections (**ex. d**)

a	**Baaaatar***, when will you come? (*calling for him)	Баатар аа, чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
b	Take care abroad, **my brother**! ("In people's place, ... think about your body.")	Хүний газар, ах минь, биеэ бодоорой.	[illegible]
c	**Bankhar*, Bankhar,** come here. (*name for dogs)	Банхар банхар, нааш ир!	[illegible]
d	**Hey, my friend**, please do not go!	Хөөе, найз минь, биттгий яваач дээ!	[illegible]

3.3.2 Inserted Parts

With the inserted parts, the speaker has a chance **to comment on** what is being said. The following words (many look like mini sentences) are often used as inserted parts. They usually appear at the **beginning** of the sentence. Some of them also serve as adverbials:

бодвол	probably ("if one thinks")
миний бодлоор	in my opinion,
миний бодоход	in my opinion
нэгдүгээрт	first
эн тэргүүнээ	first of all
нэг талаар	on one hand
нөгөө талаар	on the other hand
өөрөөр хэлбэл	in other words
нэг үгээр хэлэхэд	in one word
товчоор хэлэхэд	briefly said
эндээ гэж хэлэхэд	in private
мэдээжийн хэрэг	of course
үүнд дурдсанаар	according to this
дам сонсвол	having heard that ...
нэг мэдэхнээ	unexpectedly

завшаанаар	fortunately
аз болоход	by chance
аз дутахад	unfortunately
харамсалтай нь	regrettably
ядаж	at least
дор хаяж	at least
наад зах нь	at least
адаглаад	at least
цаад зах нь	at most
үнэндээ	as a matter of fact
нээрээ	really, indeed
чухамдаа	in reality
яриагүй	not worth mentioning
ихэнхдээ	as a whole
ерөнхийдөө	in general

Examples:

a	**In other words**, I don't have time now!	Өөрөөр хэлбэл, би одоо завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	**Really**, I can't give you work!	Нээрээ, би чамайг ажилд оруулж чадахгүй шүү.	[illegible]
c	**Of course**, I won't talk to anyone about this.	Мэдээжийн хэрэг, би энэ талаар хэнтэй ч ярихгүй.	[illegible]
d	**At least**, you need a period of 4 months for this.	Наад зах нь, үүнд дөрвөн сарын хугацаа хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

3.3.3 Interjections

Interjections make up a big percentage of the independent parts of a sentence.

a	**Brr**, how cold it is!	Тий тий, ямар хүйтэн юм бэ!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh**, what a terrible smell!	Пөөх, ямар муухай үнэр вэ!	[illegible]

3.3.4 Response Parts

Response parts which could also be word-sentences (see page 364) are **separated by commas** if they serve as independent parts of a sentence.

a	-Will you come to the meeting? **-Yes,** I'll come with Dorj.	–Та хуралд очих уу? –Тэгнэ, Доржтой хамт очно.	[illegible]
b	-Are you a foreigner? **-That's right,** I'm a German.	–Та гадаадын хүн үү? –Тийм ээ, би герман хүн.	[illegible]

4.2.1 Characteristics of Subordinate Clauses

As evident above, there are many differences between a Mongolian and an English subordinate clause. We shall now talk about these differences.

4.2.1.1 FORM AND TENSE OF PREDICATES

The predicate of a *subordinate clause* can be **built in the following ways**:
- **with a cVDS: ex. a**
- **with an undeclined NDS: ex. b-d**
- **with a declined NDS: ex. e**

a	Let me wait here ***until the teacher comes.***	Багшийг иртэл би энд хүлээж байя.	[illegible]
b	***What he said*** is right.	Түүний хэлсэн нь зөв байна.	[illegible]
c	That's ***what you always say***.	Энэ бол чиний хэлдэг.	[illegible]
d	Please don't forget the words ***I said***.	Миний хэлсэн үгийг битгий мартаарай.	[illegible]
e	Do listen to ***what I tell you!***	Миний хэлэхийг сонсож бай!	[illegible]

The ***predicate of the subordinate clause*** expresses a *tense*, which is not absolutely independent from the tense of the **predicate** of the **main clause**. The past (**ex. a-b**), present (**ex. c-e**) or future (**ex. f-h**), being expressed by the ***predicate*** *of the subordinate clause*, has to be seen in the light of the tense of the main clause.

a	I **knew** *that he had left for the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явсныг би мэдсэн.	[illegible]
b	I **know** *that he left for the countryside.*	Түүний хөдөө явсныг би мэдэнэ.	[illegible]
c	I **knew** *that he was staying in the countryside.*	Түүний хөдөө явсаар би мэдсэн.	[illegible]
d	I **know** *that he is staying in the countryside.*	Түүний хөдөө явсаар би мэдэнэ.	[illegible]
e	We **arrived** in time, *having been traveling without a stop.*	Бид зогсолтгүй явсаар цагтаа очсон.	[illegible]
f	*As soon as Dad comes,* **I'll go**.	Аавыг ирмэгц би явна.	[illegible]
g	*As soon as Dad come,* I **went**.	Аавыг ирмэгц би явсан.	[illegible]
h	I **knew** *that he would leave for the countryside.*	Түүний хөдөө явахыг би мэдсэн.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2 FORM OF SUBJECTS

In an English subordinate clause, the subject is always in the nominative case. But in Mongolian, the subject could also be in **genitive or accusative** case. An explanation for this is not easy, as there is no relationship between the subject and those two cases. For usage however, there are a **few guidelines** as to which subject takes which case. It is essential, however, to **differentiate** between **two common** subjects and **two different** subjects.

4.2.1.2.1 Common Subjects

The subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **one and the same**. Therefore, the subject needs to be mentioned **only once**, usually in the ***subordinated clause*** which precedes. It is in nominative case. By adding the **RS** to the predicate of the subordinate sentence, the **unity of the two subjects** is further **emphasized**.

a	***As soon as I came from my lessons,*** I had lunch.	Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ цайгаа уусан.	[illegible]
b	He lived in the countryside, ***until he was old.*** ("until his having become old")	Тэр настай болтлоо хөдөө суусан.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2.2 Different Subjects

If the subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **not the same**, the subject of the clause appears in either **genitive or accusative case**. Logically there can't be an RS (**ex. a-b**). **Example b** shows that the **declined** subject of the subordinate clause **alone** is proof enough, that the subjects are not the same. It would be wrong to translate "Дорж thought ***that he had won.***" That would be in Mongolian "Дорж ялсан гэж санасан" and is an example for common subjects.

a	***When I returned home,*** the others continued their talking.	Гэртээ гэртээ харихад бусад нь яриагаа ургэлжлуулжээ.	[illegible]
b	(People) thought ***that Dorj had won.***	Дорж ялсан гэж санасан.	[illegible]

Whether the subject is in genitive or accusative case depends to a large extent on the **form of the predicate** of the subordinate clause:

4.2.1.2.2.1 Subjects in Genitive Case

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with an **undeclined NDS, the** subject **is usually in** genitive case. That happens often in ***attribute clauses*** (**ex. a-b**) or in subordinate clauses with a nominal element (e.g. ***subject clauses*** = **ex. c**). Many ***object clauses*** have the structure of an attribute clause and demand also a genitive case subject (**ex. d**).

a	The flowers ***I planted,*** grew very beautifully.	Миний тарьсан цэцэг маш гоё ургажээ.	[illegible]
b	Did you see the car ***he drives***?	Тусгийн унадаг машиныг та харсан уу?	[illegible]
c	***What you said*** is right.	Таны хэлсэн чинь зөв байна.	[illegible]
d	I don't agree ***with what you said.***	Би таны хэлсэнтэй санал нийлэхгүй байна.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2.2.2 Subjects in Accusative Case

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with a **sVDS**, the subject of the subordinate clause is usually in accusative case. If the subject is **indefinite** (compare with the hierarchy list of accusative case on page 89), the suffix is dropped and appears as **zero- suffix** (–ø). See **ex. e, g and i**.
Most ***adverbial clauses*** are built this way. Note that some sVDS can only be used in sentences with a common subject (e.g. "–саар").

a	***If my older brother comes,*** I will go.	Ахыг ирвэл би явна.	[illegible]
b	Let's eat our dinner ***as soon as Father comes.***	Аавыг ирмэгц хоолоо идэцгээе.	[illegible]
c	Were you in your classroom ***when the teacher came?***	Та багшийг ирэхэд ангидаа байсан уу?	[illegible]
d	I will tell (you) ***if that person comes.***	Тэр хүнийг ирвэл би хэлье.	[illegible]
e	I will tell (you) ***if someone comes.***	Хүн(–ø) ирвэл би хэлье.	[illegible]
f	***If the dog of this family barks,*** you go out please.	Энэ айлын нохойг хуцвал чи гараарай.	[illegible]
g	***If a dog barks,*** you go out please.	Нохой(–ø) хуцвал чи гараарай.	[illegible]
h	I will wait ***until his letter arrives.***	Би түүний захиаг иртэл хүлээнэ.	[illegible]
i	I will wait ***until a letter comes from him.***	Би түүнээс захиа(–ø) иртэл хүлээнэ.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2.2.3 Subjects in Accusative or Genitive Case

In ***object clauses***, the subject can be in genitive or accusative case. Some linguists have given the following rule, which we are not too happy with, but lack a better explanation at this point:
Predicate of subordinate clause = **transitive verb**: subject tends to be in genitive case (**ex. a**).
Predicate of subordinate clause = **intransitive verb**: subject tends to be in accusative case (**ex. b**).

a	All saw ***that Bat caught the horse.***	Баттыг морь барихыг бүгдээрээ харав.	[illegible]
b	We didn't know ***that you had come.***	Таныг ирснийг бид мэдсэнгүй.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2.2.4 Basic Rules

Here is a **summary** of what has been said so far:

	Subjects are ...	Conditions:	Subjects are in ... case	Often used in ... clauses
1. ☞	common		nominative + RS	
2. ☞	different	undeclined NDS	genitive	attribute (subject, predicate)
		transitive verb	genitive	object
		VDS or declined NDS	accusative	adverbial
		intransitive verb	accusative	object
		indefinite subject	"–ø" accusative	adverbial
3. ☞	no rule without exception!			

We want to include in this book some thoughts from a **study** of **Mizuno Masanori**, *"Preference Ordering of Subject Form in Modern Mongolian"* (Tokio University Linguistic Papers, March 1995):

In colloquial language, **people very often go against the rules** mentioned above. We will list here some sentences where the subject could be in more than just one case. Mr. Masanori has developed a **preference ordering**, which we mark in the following way: **"N>G>A"**. This means, nominative is best, followed by genitive and accusative case. Such a preference ordering depends on the following **criterias**:

- connective potentiality between phrases
- avoidance of syntactic ambiguity
- subject contrastivity between the different two clauses
- quality of clauses
- avoidance of case form collision

1.) N>G>A

Галт ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?
Галтын ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?
Галтыг ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?

Is it true *that Galt came?*

2.) N>A>G

Дорж энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.
Доржийг энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.
Доржийн энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that Dori bought this book.*

3.) G>N>A

Миний ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?
Чи ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?
Намайг ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?

Have you seen the car *I came with?*

4.) G>A>N

Чиний ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чамайг ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чи ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that you came.*

5.) A>N>G

Намайг иртэл чи хүлээж бай.
Чи иртэл чи хүлээж бай.
Миний иртэл чи хүлээж бай.

Keep waiting, *until I come!*

6.) A>G>N

Чамайг сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чиний сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чи сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that you came to school.*

4.2.2 Classification of Subordinate Clauses

Every part of a sentence could be **extended to a subordinate clause**. Thus, we talk about subject clauses, predicate clauses, object clauses, attribute clauses, and adverbial clauses. Many such clauses are built with **subordinating conjunctions** (see page 307ff) or with a **sVDS**.

4.2.2.1 SUBJECT CLAUSES

Subject clauses, which don't occur frequently, have the **function of the subject** in the main clause and answers the question **'who or what?'** (хэн? юу? ясан нь?). The subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-c**). Often, the **CbP** "нь" serves as a **subject indicator** and marks the subject clause. **In ex. d,** "шас оро–" is a **fixed expression**, therefore, the subject is not declined. Note, that in the English main clause, the *correlate 'it'* must appear for the missing subject, which is actually expressed in the subject clause that follows (an exception is **ex. d**, where the whole clause is expressed like a noun).

a	*It* is right *that he left*. (**Who or what** is right?)	Тухайн явсан нь зөв.	[illegible]
b	*Your leaving* hit the bull's eye. (**Who or what** hit the bull's eye?)	Чиний явсан чинь оножээ.	[illegible]
c	*It* isn't clear, *whether he'll come tomorrow*. (**Who or what** isn't clear?)	Тухайн маргаашдирэх эсэх тодорхойгүй байна.	[illegible]
d	*The snow* was the main reason for the delay of the flight (**Who or what** was the cause ...?)	Шас орсон нь нислэг хойшлох гол шалтгаан болов.	[illegible]
e	*It* would be better *to lie down at home for some days*. (**Who or what** would be better?)	Гэртээ хэд хоног хэвтсэн нь дээр.	[illegible]

4.2.2.2 PREDICATE CLAUSES

The *predicate clause* has the **function of the predicate** in the main clause. In most cases, it's a **nominal** predicate, **a subject complement.** This subordinate clause is the only kind of clause which is **placed after the main clause**. Its subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-b**). Predicate clauses are **rare.**

a	This is *what you always say*.	Энэ бол чиний хэлдэг.	[illegible]
b	That (you) learned the Mongolian language, *is the fruit of your efforts*.	Монгол хэл сурсан нь та нарын хичээснийх.	[illegible]
c	That well is *(a well) that has water*. (common sentence in the countryside, where not every well has water)	Тэр худаг бол ус гардаг.	[illegible]

4.2.2.3 OBJECT CLAUSES

The *object clause* has the **function of an object** in the main clause and answers questions like **'who? whom? about what?', etc.** (юу/г? юунд? юуны тухай? юуны талаар? яахыг?). Having this function, it is declined. Often, such a **declension** results in an English translation using **relative pronouns** (..., that..., which...). Object clauses have subjects:

- in **nominative** (with common subjects and the use of the [illegible]: **ex. a-c**)
- often in **genitive**, because the sentence structure is similar to an attribute clause (**ex. d-g**):
- rarely in **accusative** (**ex. h**).

a	I'm faithful *to what* [illegible] *told you.* (**To whom or what** am I faithful?)	Би [illegible] хэлсэндээ үнэнч.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	Bat hadn't let me know *when he came back.* (**What** didn't Bat let me know?)	Бат [illegible] ирсэнд надад хэлээгүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	Why are you not doing (it) *according to what you said?* (Why are you not doing **what**?)	Та яагаад хэлсэн дагуу [illegible] хийхгүй байна вэ?	[illegible] [illegible]
d	I'd like to ask quite a lot of things *in regard to what* [illegible] *have written.* (**About whom or what** would I like to ask?)	Би [illegible] бичсэнээс нилээд юм асуумаар байна.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
e	I don't agree *with what* [illegible] *said.* (**With what** do I not agree?)	Би [illegible] хэлсэнтэй санал нийлэхгүй байна.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
f	We didn't know *that* [illegible] *had come.* (**Who or what** didn't we know?)	[illegible] ирснийг бид мэдсэнгүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
g	I knew *that* [illegible] *couldn't come.*	[illegible] ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг би мэдэж байсан.	[illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible]
h	I've just found out *that* [illegible] *came to school.*	[illegible] сургуульд ирсэнийг би сая мэдлээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

4.2.2.4 ATTRIBUTE CLAUSES

The *attribute clause* has the **function of an attribute** in the main clause and answers questions like **'what kind of? which?'** (ямар? аль? яасан?). As a rule, the subject is in **genitive case** and the predicate is built with an **undeclined NDS**.

a	It's time *that* [illegible] *went home.* (**What kind of time** is it?)	[illegible] гэртээ харих цаг болов. (attribute to subject)	[illegible] ··
b	This is something *(that)* [illegible] *always say.* (**What kind of** something?)	Энэ бол [illegible] хэлдэг үг. (attribute to predicate)	[illegible] ··
c	I brought the horse *which* [illegible] *ride.* (**What kind of horse** did I bring?)	Би [illegible] унадаг морийг авчирлаа. (attribute to object)	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
d	Let's wait until the teacher *(that)* [illegible] *met* comes.	[illegible] таарсан багшийг иртэл хүлээцгээе.(attribute to adverbial)	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

4.2.2.5 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

The ***adverbial clause*** has the **function of an adverbial** in the main clause and answers questions like **'why? when? where? how?', etc.** (яагаад? хэзээ? хаана? яаж?). These clauses are **widely used** and can be **built in several ways**:

- common subjects → subject in nominative (+ RS) (**ex. a-b**)
- predicate with a **sVDS** → subject in accusative (**ex. c-e**)
  (in **ex. e**, "намар бол–" is a fixed expression, therefore, no accusative suffix)
- predicate with **declined NDS** * → subject usually in nominative (**ex. f-i**)
- predicate with **instrumental-case-declined NDS** → subject in genitive (**ex. j-l**)

(* declined: with "бол/болов" or subordinating conjunctions)

a	***As soon as I start reading a book,*** I forget everything. (**When** do I forget ....?)	Би ном уншиж эхэлмэгцээ бүх юмыг мартдаг юм.	[illegible]
b	***As soon as I get there,*** I'll write you a letter. (**When** will I write you a letter?)	Би очмогцоо чамд захиа бичнэ.	[illegible]
c	***When the teacher comes,*** please go to your lesson. (Go **when** to your lesson?)	Багшийг ирэхлээр хичээлдээ очоорой.	[illegible]
d	(Someone) was beaten ***until the dry stick broke apart.*** (**How** was someone beaten?)	Хуурай модыг хугартал зодлоо.	[illegible]
e	***When it becomes autumn,*** the plants wither, and it gets cool. (**When** do the plants wither?)	Намар болохлоор ногоо гандаж, сэрүүн болдог.	[illegible]
f	***If that person knows Russian well,*** (then) explain it in Russian! (Explain it in Russian **under what condition**?)	Хэн хүн орос хэл сайн мэддэг бол чи оросоор тайлбарла!	[illegible]
g	***Although he hadn't talked with me about this,*** I knew it. (**Despite what** did I know?)	Тэр надад энэ тухай яриагүй болов ч би мэдсэн.	[illegible]
h	***Because my father has come from Germany,*** I don't have a lot of time these days. (**Why** do I not have a lot of time?)	Манай аав Германаас ирсэн тул би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	[illegible]
i	***Because our father didn't come,*** we couldn't go. (**Why** couldn't we go?)	Манай аав ирээгүй учраас бид нар явж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
j	Baatar wrote this letter ***the way the teacher had suggested it.*** (**How** did he write this letter?)	Баатар энэ захиаг багшийн зөвлөснөөр бичив.	[illegible]
k	I'll do this ***the way you said it.*** (**How** will I do it?)	Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.	[illegible]
l	We went ***where you had gone.*** (**Where** did we go?)	Та нарын явснаар бид явсан.	[illegible]

4.3 Extended Combined Sentences

The extended combined sentence, in Mongolian called "mixture sentence", is a **combination of complex and compound sentences**. Such combinations could be:

1.) The subordinated clause of a complex sentence is made up of a compound sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called.**	Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц тэр утасдсан.	[illegible]

2.) The compound sentence is the main clause of a complex sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*When he called,* **I had just come from my lessons and was having lunch.**	Түүнийг утасдахад би хичээлээсээ ирээд цайгаа ууж байсан.	[illegible]

3.) Both, main and subordinate clause, are made up of compound sentences:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called and told (me) about this.**	Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц тэр утасдаж энэ тухай хэлсэн.	[illegible]

4.4 Speech

In order to use speech in Mongolian, the **conjunction verb** "гэ-" is needed (page 210). Direct and indirect speech have some **characteristics** which we have listed below:

	direct speech	**indirect speech**
a	written **with quotation marks** (or dash)	written **without quotation marks**
b	subject is in **nominative**	subject is in **accusative**

4.4.1 Direct Speech

A **speech** that has the **actual words quoted,** is called *'direct speech'*. The subject is in **nominative case and, usually, at the beginning of the sentence.** Direct speech is either put in **quotation marks** (**ex. a-b**) or the new line is marked with a **dash** (**ex. c-d**). The conjunction verb "гэ-", which could be declined in different ways, serves as the conjunction between the speech and the other part of the sentence.

a	A man asked, *"My son, where are you about to go?"*	Аав:"Хүү минь, хаачих нь вэ?" гэж асуусан.	[illegible]
b	Baatar met his friend and greeted him, *"Hi, what's new with you?"*	Баатар найзтайгаа уулзаад "Сайн уу? Сонин юутай?" гэж мэндлэв.	[illegible]

c	A woman addressed her tired son and said, ***"Go to sleep. Let me finish the thing you started."***	Эзж нь ядарсан хүүдээ хандан, – Чи унт, унт. Би эхэлсэн юмыг чинь дуусгая гэв.	[illegible]
d	The teacher addresses his students, praising them saying things like, ***"You did your exams very successfully."***	Багш оюутнуудлаа хандан, – Та нар шалгалтаа амжилттай өгсөн гэж мэтээр магтаж байна.	[illegible]

4.4.2 Indirect Speech

Indirect speech is **not quoted with the actual words** of the person who said it, but a **rendering of that person's speech.** In English, subjunctive is used to express indirect speech. In Mongolian, the transformation of speech is easier **because the *actual speech* changes less**.

Direct: This child said, ***"I go home."***
Энэ хүүхэд "Би гэртээ харина" гэж хэлсэн.
Indirect: This child said, ***(that) it would go home.***
Энэ хүүхэд гэртээ харина гэж хэлсэн.

Direct: Mother called, ***"Come here!"***
Эзж "нааш ир!" гэж дуудсан.
Indirect: Mother called me to come (to her).
Эзж намайг нааш ир гэж дуудсан.

If the two subjects are **common**, the subject has to be mentioned only **once**, usually in the main clause (**ex. a-b**). With two **different subjects**, the order of words in the sentence is:
1.) subject of the main clause (in nominative)
2.) indirect speech clause (subject in accusative)
3.) ***conjunction verb*** "гэ-"
4.) predicate of the main clause (e.g. said, shouted, answered)

a	My older brother said, ***(that) he had no time.***	Миний ах завгүй гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
b	Mother said, ***(that) she would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Эзж орой кинотеатрт очно гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
c	My older brother said, ***(that) the mother had no time.***	Миний ах эзжийг завгүй гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
d	Mother said, ***(that) her friend would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Эзж найзыгаа орой кинотеатрт очно гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]

4.4.3 Transformation of Speech

In order to transform ***direct speech into indirect speech***, there are **4 basic rules**:

1. ☞ **Quotation marks** are dropped (**all examples**)
2. ☞ Subject changes from nominative case to accusative case (**all examples**)
3. ☞ Missing subject must be expressed (**ex. b**)
4. ☞ **Dative or ablative case object** becomes one and the same with the subject (**ex. c-d**)
5. ☞ ChP or personal pronouns become RS –аа (**ex. e**)

a	My older brother said, ***"Mother has no time."***	Миний ах: "Ээж завгүй" гэж хэлэв.	[illegible] ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠄ «[illegible] ᠦᠬᠡᠢ»
	My older brother said, ***(that) Mother had no time.***	Миний ах ээжийг завгүй гэж хэлэв.	[illegible] ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠄ [illegible] ᠦᠬᠡᠢ
b	Mother called, ***"Come here!"***	Ээж "Нааш ир!" гэж дуудав.	[illegible] ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤᠯᠪᠠ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ ᠢᠷᠡ – » [illegible]
	Mother called me to come (to her).	Ээж [illegible] нааш ир гэж дуудав.	[illegible] ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤᠯᠪᠠ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ ᠢᠷᠡ [illegible]
c	The teacher asked **me**: ***"How old are you?"***	Багш надаас: "[illegible] хэдэн настай вэ?" гэж асуув.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] » [illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ ᠢᠨᠡ᠄ «[illegible]
	The teacher asked **me**, ***how old I was.***	Багш [illegible] хэдэн настай вэ гэж асуув.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ [illegible]
d	The teacher told **me**: ***"Make sure you read this book."***	Багш надад "[illegible] энэ номыг заавал уншаарай" гэж хэлэв.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] » [illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ [illegible] «[illegible]
	The teacher told **me** ***to make sure that I read this book.***	Багш [illegible] энэ номыг заавал уншаарай гэж хэлэв.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ [illegible]
e	A woman asked, ***"My son, what time is it?"***	Ээж нь: "[illegible], цаг хэд болж байна?" гэж асуув.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] » [illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠬᠠᠨ᠄ «[illegible]
	A woman asked ***her son what time it was.***	Ээж нь [illegible] цаг хэд болж байна гэж асуув.	[illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible] ᠬᠠᠨ᠄ [illegible]

5. PUNCTUATION

The **sentence structure is organized** with the help of different **marks and dots**. In oral language, the same thing is achieved by intonation and pauses.

5.1 Punctuation in Classical Script

In Classical Script there is a **division in marks and dots**.

5.1.1 Dots

dots:	᠃	᠂	᠄	᠈	᠉	᠊
names:	period (Am.) full stop (Br.)	comma	semi-colon	colon	omission dots	"round dot"
usage:	Marks the end of a declarative sentence.	Marks pauses in the sentence and divides co-ordinate words, parts of sentence and clauses.	Divides independent clauses.	Emphasizes the announce-ment of the following part or sentence.	Marks a part that is omitted.	Marks a division.
ex:	ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃	ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨ᠂ ᠨᠠᠷᠠᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂	ᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯᠳᠠᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠨᠠᠷᠠᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯᠳᠠᠨ᠂	ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠄ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠄	ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠂	ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠯᠣᠨᠳᠤ᠂

5.1.2 Marks

marks:	?	!	« »	( )	—	-
names:	question mark	exclamation mark	quotation marks (Am.) inverted commas (Brit.)	parentheses (Am.) brackets (Brit.)	dash	hyphen
usage:	Marks the end of an interrogative sentence.	Marks the end of an exclamatory sentence.	Marks speeches and quotations.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks local or temporal beginnings and ends.
ex:	Чи явсан уу?	Ирсэнгүй ээ!	Эмэгтэй: «Ирсэн» гэв.	Ирсэн (ирсэнгүй) гэв.	Эмэгтэй — ирсэн гэв.	1996—2000 оны

5.2 Punctuation in Cyrillic Script

The punctuation in Cyrillic is more or less the same as in English. However, some comma rules are different and the quotation marks «...» are not known in English.

5.2.1 Period (Am.)/Full stop (Brit.)

Periods mark the **end of declarative sentences** and are used in **abbreviations**.

Би явсан.	Тэр ирээгүй.	I went.	He hasn't come.
Д. Цэрэн	А. Баяр	D. Tseren	A. Bayar

5.2.2 Question marks

Question marks are put at the **end of interrogative sentences**.

Чиний дүү ирсэн үү?	Did your younger sister come?
Чи ирнэ биз?	You'll come, won't you?
Чи хэзээ ажиллах вэ?	When will you work?

5.2.3 Exclamation marks

Exclamation marks are put at the end of **exclamatory** and **imperative sentences**, but often they are dropped in Mongolian because a particle has taken the function of them (**ex.b**).

Надад туслаач!	Please help me!
Ээж чинь ирлээ шүү.	Your mother came!
Нааш ир!	Come here!
Ямар сайхан юм бэ!	How nice this is!

5.2.4 Commas

Commas are used to show the **pauses** in the sentences. Here a few **basic rules.**
Commas are needed when:

1.☞ Listing *coordinate elements* without conjunction words

(Attention: In English with conjunction "and" much better.)

Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны өндөр сайхан нуруунууд. (coordinate subjects)	The high beautiful mountain ranges of ***Khentii, Khangai, and Sayan.***
Би дэлгүүрээс ногоон, улаан, шар, цэнхэр цаас авлаа.(coordinate adjectives)	I bought ***green, red, yellow, and blue*** paper at the shop.
Би Англи, Швейцарь, Герман, Монголд амьдарч байсан. (coordinate adverbials)	I lived ***in England, Switzerland, Germany, and Mongolia***.
Би танд тусалж байсан, тусалж байна, туслах болно. (coordinate verbs)	I ***helped***, I ***help***, and ***will help*** you.

No comma with:
- ***words* of different semantical groups:** Би дэлгүүрээс шинэ чухал үнэтэй ном авлаа.
- ***Word combinations*:** Хүмүүс энх тайвныг хүсдэг.

2.☞ Separating *independent parts of a sentence*

Болд оо, нааш ир дээ!	***Booold***, come here!
Чи энэ улирлаар амжилттай, өөрөөр хэлбэл, онц сурч чадна шүү.	This term, you can study successfully, ***in other words***, with the grade A.
Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	**Ugh,** I wouldn't think that you were such a person!
Үгүй, би ээжтэйгээ маргааш уулзахгүй.	**No,** I won't meet my mother tomorrow.

No comma if the independent part is emphasized. Then an exclamatory mark is demanded. Халхай, халхай! Гар түлчихлээ. (***Ouch, ouch!*** I burned my hand.)

3.☞ Marking compound-sentence *clauses* that are separated by intonation

Би сайхан хоол идсэн, миний хүүхдүүд юу ч идээгүй.	***I had a nice meal, my children didn't have any.***
Харьсан шувуу ирдэг, явсан хүн эргэдэг.	***Migratory birds come back, people that have left, return.***

4. ☞ Marking pauses in long sentences whith clauses that are linked with a *cVDS*.

clause 1 + conjunction	Өглөөний нар оргин гарч ирэхэд
clause 2 + *VDS + comma*	голын эхэн дэх саруул хөндий гэрэлтэж,
clause 3 + *VDS + comma*	ариун агаар татан,
clause 4 + conjunction	үнэхээр зуны амьсгал мэдрэгдэх бөгөөд
clause 5 + *VDS + comma*	дэргэдэх цэцэг өвсөнд нимгэн цагаан хяруу гялтганаад,
clause 6 + subj. indicator	тэртээ ойд ногооны униар залгалдах нь
clause 7+ **period**	даруй нүүдэлчин малчин хүний сэтгэлийг хөдөлгөне.

5. ☞ Avoiding confusion

Өчигдөр чамаас авсан номыг олсон. (They) found the book which had been taken from you yesterday.	Өчигдөр, чамаас авсан номыг олсон. ***Yesterday,*** (they) found the book which had been taken from you.
Цэцэг жимс түүв. (Someone) picked flowers ('tsetseg') and berries.	Цэцэг, жимс түүв. ***Tsetseg*** picked berries.

6. ☞ Changing the word order

Би энэ номыг чинь авлаа шүү. I bought ***this book, you know***!	Би авлаа шүү, энэ номыг чинь. I bought it, ***this book, you know!***
Та бол дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан. ***You are*** the Highest, King of all kings.	Дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан, Та. The Highest, King of all kings, ***you are.***

5.2.5 Semi-colon

Semi-colons are used when the pause is bigger than with a comma, but not big enough to put a period. They are often used in **resolutions, laws, etc**. and not often in literature.

(from a contract)

II. Гэрээг цуцлах: 1. Монгол судлаач хүндэтгэх шалтгаанаар тус улсаас бүрмөсөн буцах болбол; 2. Монгол улсын хууль дүрмийг ноцтой зөрчвөл; (гэх мэт)	II. Cancellation of contract: 1. If the Mongolist is forced to leave this country due to serious reasons; 2. If he significantly violates the laws and regulations of Mongolia; etc.

5.2.6 Colon

Colons are used to **emphasize the announcements** of the following parts. They are widely used in ***direct speech, quotations, and listing things:***

Баатар надад: "Чи багштайгаа уулзах хэрэгтэй" гэж хэлэв.	Baatar told me, ***"You have to go and see your teacher."***
Есүс: "Би бол Ертөнцийн Эзэн-Эцэг тийш очих ганцхан зам мөн" гэж хэлэв.	Jesus said, ***"No one comes to the Father except through me."***
Оюутан бүр бүртгүүлэхдээ дараах зүйлийг авчрах: 150 ам.доллар, 2 хувь зураг, тодорхойлолт, оршин суух зөвшөөрөл.	Each student is to bring the following items for registration: USD 150, 2 passport photos, references, proof-of-residence permit.

5.2.7 Quotation marks (Am.)/Inverted commas (Brit.)

Quotation marks are used for ***direct speech***, for ***quotations***, and in order to **emphasize** ***particular words*** which are used in a non-literal sense.
There are two possible forms: "..." and «...». The latter is not known in English.

Болд: "Эзж маань орой ирнэ" гэж хэллээ.	Bold said, "***My mother will come in the evening***."
Мөн ч «гавшгай» ажилладаг хүн байна даа.	Why! He is someone working so '***efficiently***'!
«Өсөхөөс сурсан үндэсний хэл Мартаж болшгүй соёл Үхтэл орших төрөлх нутаг Салж болшгүй орон.» (Д.Нацагдорж)	***"The national language learned while being raised*** ***Is a culture that (I) can't ever forget*** ***The homeland (I) live in until (I) die*** ***Is a place that (I) can't ever leave"*** (D. Natsagdorj)

5.2.8 Omission dots

Omission dots (three dots) are used to replace a ***part that is omitted***.

Бат: "Миний аав ... " гэж хэлэнгүүт ухаан алдлаа.	When Bat was just saying, "My father ... ", he lost his consciousness.

5.2.9 Parentheses (Am.)/Brackets (Brit.)

Parentheses are used **to insert words** or whole parts of sentences that serve as an ***explanation*** or a ***complement***:

Манай багш (Ц. Болдбаатар) Франц улсад монгол хэл зааж байгаа.	Our teacher ***(Ts. Boldbaatar)*** is teaching Mongolian in France.
Өнөөдөр (есөн сарын нэгэнд) бүх хүүхдүүд хичээлдээ явна.	Today ***(September 1st)***, all children will go to school.

5.2.10 Dash and Hyphen

There is a **long** line for intellectual pauses (**dash**) and a **short** line for connections (**hyphen**).

Dashes can follow ***subjects*** to **mark them** (instead of another subject indicator), or they can replace the **quotation marks** in **direct speech**. If so, they are put at the beginning of a new line.

Чанар – манай ажлын гол үзүүлэлт.	***Quality*** – the main characteristic of our work.
Эзэж нь хүүдээ хандан, –Би чамтай хамт явах уу? гэхэд хүү нь, –Үгүй, би ганцаараа явж чадна гэв.	When the woman addressed her son and asked, "Shall I go with you?", the son answered. "No, I can go alone."

Hyphens are used to **connect** ***two words, numbers and their suffixes***, and also to connect ***personal names***: if the second of two names begins with a vowel, then a hyphen is put in between them. In literature, ***words of similar meaning*** are equated using a hyphen.

Улаанбаатар-Дарханы төмөр замыг тэр жил байгуулжээ.	The railway ***Ulaanbaatar-Darkhan*** was built in that year.
5-р сарын 24-нд	On May 24th ("5th month")
XIII-XIV зууны үед монголчуud дэлхий даяар маш алдартай байжээ.	In the **13-14th** century, the Mongolians were very famous throughout the world.
Болд-Эрдэнэ, Бат-Оргил, Говь-Алтай	***Bold-Erdene, Bat-Orgil, Gov'-Altai***
Эх орон-Монголоо зоргоолтгүй чимье.	Let's decorate our ***motherland, Mongolia,*** unceasingly.

Part V:

Appendix

1.List of Passive Roots
pages 407-410

2. List of Some Phrasal Verbs
pages 411-412

3. List of Inflectional Suffixes
pages 413-417

4. Structural and Functional System of Relational Suffixes
pages 418-421

5. Mongolian Equivalent of English Tense System
page 422

6. Table of Contents in Mongolian
pages 423-437

7. Index: English-German-Mongolian
pages 438-448

1. LIST OF PASSIVE ROOTS

The following list is a complement to p. 35. It contains most passive roots of the Mongolian language. On the top right hand side of every passive root table, we gave the **'general meaning'**.

1.		нэ- (ний-)	**one, to be one**
a		нэг (эн)	one
b		нэгд-	to be united
c		нэгдэл	union, solidarity
d		нэгж	unit
e		нэгжи-	to search
f		нэгжлэг	search
g		нэгтгэ-	to unite, to unify
h		нэгэнт	once, already
i		нэжгээд	one each
j		нийгэм	society
k		нийлбэр	sum, confluence
l		нийлмэл	mixed, compound
m		нийлэг	synthetic, compound
n		нийлэ-	to come together
o		нийслэл	capital
p		нийт	all, total
q		нийц	agreement, harmony
r		нийцэ-	to correspond, to conform

2.		хо-	**two**
a		хоёр	two
b		хоёрхон	only two
c		хоёул	the two of ...
d		хос	pair, couple
e		хосло-	to unite into pairs
f		хослол	pairing
g		хосгүй	matchless
h		холбо-	to join
i		холбоо	tie, liason
j		холбоос	link, hyphen
k		холбогдо-	to have to do with
l		холбоот	union
m		холбооч	post and telegraph worker
n		хорши-	to mix, to combine
o		хоршоо	cooperative
p		хоршоолол	cooperativization
q		хорь	twenty
r		хошой	double (e.g. gold medal winner)
s		хооронд	between
t		холи-	to mix
u		хольц	mixture
v		хоч	nick name
w		холимог	mixed, alloyed

3.		гу-	**three**
a		гуч	thirty
b		гуч (ач гуч)	great- (e.g. -grand daughter)
c		гуна	3 year old male ox
d		гунж	3 year old female cow
e		гуттаар	the third (literary)
f		гурав	three
g		гурвалжин	triangle
h		гурвал	trio
i		гурамсан	three- (e.g. three-horse carriage)
j		гурвуул	the three of ...

4.		дэ-	**high, on**
a		дээр	on, above
b		дээрдэ-	to improve
c		дээд	high, supreme, upper
d		дээдэс	ancestors, aristocrats

e		дээш	up(wards), more than
f		дээшлэ-	to go up, to progress
g		дээгүүр	above, over
h		дээрэлхүү	arrogant, insolent
i		дээрэм	robbery, pillage
j		дээрэмдэ-	to rob, to plunder
k		дээвэр	roof, covering
l		дээрэнгүй	arrogant, haughty
m		дээрэлхэ-	to be overbearing
n		дэл	mane,horsehair
o		дэв	rank, order
p		дэвэ-	to flap the wings
q		дэвши-	to develop, to make progress
r		дэвжи-	to grow strong
s		дэвхэр-	to leap,to jump
t		дэнж	hillock,terace
u		дэндүү	too,excessively
v		дэндэ-	to exceed the norm
w		дэгжин	elegant, fashionable
x		дэгжи-	to thrive, to prosper
y		дэмжлэг	support, help

5.		до-	**below, under**
a		доор	below, under
b		доод	lower, bottom
c		доогуур	underground
d		доош	down(wards)
e		доошло-	to droop
f		дор	below, under
g		доогло-	to mock
h		дордо-	to be too low, to worsen
i		дорой	weak, feeble
j		доройто-	to be weak, to deteriorate
k		доромжлол	humiliation, insult

6.		дот-	**inside**
a		дотор	inner, internal,
b	()	дотно	intimate, kind-red (inside)
c		дотогш	in(wards)
d		дотоод	interior, domestic
e		дотуур	inner, within

7.		га-	**outer**
a		гадна	outside (of) exterior
b		гадаа	outside
c		гадагш	out of
d		гадуур	outside, exterior
e		гадарга (гадаргуу)	surface
f		гадар	the outside
g		гадаад	external,foreign
h		гадарла-	to cover with a surface

8.	(цаа)	цаа-	**other side**
a		цаана	farther,beyond
b		цаад	situated on the other side
c		цаадахь	situated beyond
d	+	цааш	away from, farther
e		цаашла-	to go farther, to go on
f		цаагуур	along the other side

9.	(нь)	наа-	**this side, here**
a		наана	on this side, closer to here
b		наад	situated on this side
c		наадахь	that nearest on this side, the very
d	(нааш)	нааш	this way, hither, closer

e		наашла-	to approach
f		наагуур	along this side, superficially
g		наагуурда-	to be too close, to be too superficial

10		хой-	**north, behind**
a		хойно	in the north, in the back
b		хойт	back, rear, northern
c		хойш	north(wards) back(wards)
d		хойгуур	along the back
e		хойтон	the next year
f		хоймор	the rear part of a yurt
g		хойч	future, descendants
h		хойшло-	to be postponed
i		хойшлуул-	to postpone

11		ца-	**white**
a		цаас	paper
b		цагаан	white
c		цагаа	milk products
d		цагаада-	to be rehabilitated
e		цагаала-	to greet at New Year
f		цагаач	emigrant, vagabond
g		цайвар	whitish, pale
h		цай-	to dawn, to grow light
i		цайра-	to turn pale, to fade
j		цайлган	innocent
k		цал (буурал)	totally white

12		бая-	**rich**
a		баян	rich
b		баялаг	riches, wealth
c		бяс-	to rejoice
d		баячууд	the rich
e		баяжи-	to become rich
f		баяр	joy, gladness
g		баяртай	good-bye
h		баярла-	to be happy

13		сай-	**good**
a		сайн	good, well
b		сайхан	nice, nicely
c		сайжра-	to improve
d		сайд	minister
e		сайрха-	to boast, to brag
f		сайда-	to improve a relationship
g		сайтар	well, thoroughly
h		сайтай	having good quality
i		сайшаа-	to praise, to award
j		сайшаал	award, approval
k		сайчууд	elite, best workers

14		ноё-	**prince, lord**
a		ноён	prince, lord
b		ноёло-	to dominate
c		ноёлог	lordly,haughty
d		ноёрхо-	to oppress

15		хожи-	**late**
a		хождо-	to be late
b		хожи-	to win
c		хожигдо-	to loose
d		хожим	after, then
e		хожимдо-	to be late
f		хожуу	late, tardy
g		хожоо	profit, benefit

16		ул-	**red**
a		улаан	red
b		улаавтар	reddish
c		улбар	orange reddish

d		улай-	to blush, to confess
e		улайра-	to become red
f		улайлга-	to make ashamed
g		улангас-	to become ferocious
h		улалза-	to appear red
i		улаагана	red currant

17		ха-	... off
a		хада-	to mow
b		халуур	sickle
c		хадлан	hay cutting
d		хаза-	to bite
e		хажи-	to hem
f		хаса-	to subtract
g		хасуур	chisel
h		хаши-	to fence off
i		хашаа	fence, hedge

18		да-	over-
a		дава-	to overcome
b		даваа	mountain pass
c		давуу	outstanding
d		дара-	to press, to crush
e		дайла-	to make war, to entertain
f		дайра-	to hit, to attack
g		дайн	war
h		дайчин	warrior, militant
i		дайчла-	to mobilize
j		дайсан	enemy

19		ов-	to heep
a		овоо	stone heep
b		овооло-	to accumulate
c		овооро-	to crowd
d		овор	appearance, figure
e		оволзо-	to move up and down

20		ог-	abrupt
a		огдгор	short (for skirt)
b		огдой-	to be short
c		огцом	steep, quick-tempered
d		огтол-	to cut (off)
e		огцор-	to be fired

The following 4 passive roots are particles, which appear with other words:

21		бута-	fragmented
a	(бут)	бутал-	to crumble
b		бутра-	to scatter
c		бутач	illegitimate child
d		бутархай	fraction

22		хага-	broken
a		хагара-	to break (intr.)
b		хагарал	breaking, split
c		хагархай	splinter, chip
d		хагас	half, semi-
e		хагасла-	to divide in half
f		хагал-	to break (tr.)
g		хагаца-	to separate
h		хагацал	separation

23		суга-	... out
a		сугара-	to come off
b		сугал-	to pull out, to draw lots
c		сугалаа	lot, lottery

24		няц-	asunder
a		няц	crushed
b		няца-	to retreat
c		нянцаа-	to repulse
d		няцра-	to be crushed
e		няцал-	to crush

2. LIST OF SOME PHRASAL VERBS

We have tried to list the most important Mongolian verbs that take another case than in English:

1	ай– to be afraid	хэнээс? юунаас? **of** whom? **of** what?	Нохойноос битгий ай! Don't be afraid **of** the dog!
2	айлчла– to visit (as a guest)	юунд? whom? what?	Төлөөлөгчид Америкт айлчлав. The representatives visited America.
3	анхаар– to pay attention	хэнийг? юуг? **to** whom? **to** what?	Та энэ асуудлыг анхаарах хэрэгтэй. You should pay attention **to** this matter.
4	асуу– to ask	хэнээс? юунаас? whom? what?	Та багшаас асуугаарай. Please ask the teacher.
5	багшла– to teach	хэнд? whom? (Acc.)	Тэр надад олон жил багшилсан. He taught me for many years.
6	баярла– to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom?	Танд баярлалаа. Thank you.
7	баярла– to be glad	хэнд? юунд? **about** what?	Үүнд би баярлаж байна. I am glad **about** this.
8	болгоомжло– to watch out to be careful	хэнээс? юунаас? **for** what? **of** what?	Хулгайчаас болгоомжил! Watch out **for** thieves! Be careful **of** cars!
9	гайха– to be surprised	юунд? **by** what?	Чи үүнд битгий гайх. Don't be surprised **by** this.
10	гомдо– to be offended	хэнд? юунд? **by** whom? **by** what?	Тэр чамд гомджээ. He was offended **by** you.
11	гуй– to beg (ask strongly)	хэнээс? юунаас? whom?	Түүнээс битгий гуй! Don't beg him.
12	гуниглаа– to be sad	юунд? **about** what?	Чи юунд гуниглаа вэ? Why are you sad? ("What are you sad **about**?")
13	гэмши– to regret to repent	юунд? what? **of** what?	Би үүнд гэмшиж байна. I regret this. I repent **of** this.
14	гэрлэ– to get married	хэнтэй? **to** whom	Тэр багштайгаа гэрлэсэн. She got married **to** her teacher.
15	далла– to wave	юугаар? **with** what?	Эмээ алчуураар далласан. The grandmother waved **with** a headscarf.
16	дурла– to fall in love to like/to desire	хэнд? юунд? with whom? what?	Би нэг бүсгүйд дурласан. Үүнд битгий дурлаарай. I fell in love **with** a young woman. Don't desire this.
17	итгэ– to believe to trust	хэнд? юунд? (**in**) whom?(**in**) what? whom?	Би танд итгэж байна. I believe you. (I believe **in** you.) I trust you.
18	ичи– to be ashamed to be embarrassed	хэнээс? юунаас? **before** whom? **about** what?	Би түүнээс ичиж байна. Би хамарнаасаа ичиж байна. I am ashamed **before** him. I am embarassed **about** my nose.
19	заа– to teach	хэнд? whom?	Би түүнд англи хэл заадаг. I teach **him** English.
20	зөвлө– to take advice	хэнтэй? **from** whom?	Би багштайгаа зөвлөе. Let me take advice **from** my teacher.
21	зөвшөөрө– to agree	юуг? **with** what?	Би түүний хэлснийг зөвшөөрч байна. I agree **with** what he said.

22	мөрөөдө– to dream	хэнийг? юуг? **about** what?	Би Америк явахыг мөрөөдөж байна. I dream **about** going to America.
23	найда– to trust	хэнд? юунд? (**in**)whom? (**in**)what?	Би өөртөө найдаж байна. I trust myself.
24	нөлөөлө– to influence	хэнд? юунд? whom? what?	Тэр надад их нөлөөлсөн. He has influenced me a lot.
25	ол– to find	хаанаас? where?	Би түлхүүрээ хаанаас ч олоогүй. I haven't found my key anywhere.
26	өвд– to be ill	юугаар? **with** what?	Миний эзэж өмөн үүгээр өвдсөн. My mother was ill **with** cancer.
27	сонго– to be elected (English prefers passive voice)	юугаар? what?	Бид тууний Улсын Их Хурлын гишүүнээр сонгосон. He was elected a member of the Great National 'Khural' (by us).
28	сонирхо– to take interest	хэнийг? юуг? **in** whom? **in** what?	Тэр энэ номыг их сонирхсон. He took great interest **in** this book.
29	сонс– to listen	юуг? **to** what?	Тэр үргэлж радио сонсдог. He always listens **to** the radio.
30	талархa– to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom? **for** what?	Би танд талархаж байна. Намайг урьсанд талархаж байна. I thank you. Thank you **for** inviting me.
31	уйд– to be bored	хэнээс? юунаас? **with** what?	Би чамаас уйдаж байна. I am bored **with** you.
32	утасда– to call/ to phone	хэн руу? юу руу? whom?	Над руу утасдаарай. Call/phone me, please.
33	уурла– to be angry	хэнд? юунд? **with** whom? **about** what?	Эзэж надад уурласан. Тэр үүнд маш их уурласан. The mother was angry **with** me. He was very angry **about** that.
34	уя– to tie	хэнээс? юунаас? **to** whom? **to** what?	Би морио модноос уясан. I tied my horse **to** the tree.
35	хоцор– to be (too) late	хэнээс? юунаас? **for** what?	Би хурлаас хоцорсон. I was late **for** the meeting.
36	хөгжимдө– to play (instrument)	юугаар? what?	Чи юугаар хөгжимдөг вэ? What instrument do you play?
37	хүлээ– to wait	хэнийг? юуг? **for** whom? **for** what?	Та хэнийг хүлээж байна вэ? Whom are you waiting **for**?
38	яара– to hurry	юунд? **to** what?	Чи юунд яарсан бэ? What were you hurrying **to**?
39	ядра– to be tired	юунд? **from** what?	Би ажилдаа ядарч байна. I am tired **from** my work.

3. LIST OF INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

In this list, we've tried to give **all the inflectional suffixes** of the Mongolian language in **Cyrillic alphabetical order**. We use, as also throughout the book, the following **abbreviations** and guidelines:

AsS = **A**spect **S**uffix
AwDS = **A**dword **D**etermining **S**uffix
AwS = **A**dword **S**uffix
CbS = **C**ase-bound **S**uffix
CS = **C**ase **S**uffix
cVDS = **c**o-ordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
NDS = **N**oun **D**etermining **S**uffix
NuS = **N**umeral **S**uffix
PS = **P**lural **S**uffix
PTS = **P**erson-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
RS = **R**eflexive **S**uffix
sVDS = **s**ubordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
TTS = **T**ense-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
VDS = **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
VoS = **V**oice **S**uffix

a) Suffixes having **more than one form**, are listed with all forms, but **only with the basic form** we've given the name and the Classical Mongolian Script version.

–аараа^4		**PTS (demand)**	
–ээрэй		–аараа^4	

b) Suffixes taking an **inserted vowel** (e.g. "–(а)гтун") are not listed. But suffixes taking an **inserted consonant (not to be confused with hidden "н" or "г"!)** are listed like this:

–(г)ийн		–ийн	
–(х)аа^4		–аа^4	

c) Only a few Cyrillic suffixes are **not added directly** to the stem. With such suffixes, we write an exclamation mark instead of a dash:

(!) нар		**PS**	

d) Zero-suffixes are also important suffixes, as they show an existing subordination that is not written. They are marked like this:

–ø	**–ø**	**PTS (command)**	

The suffixes which are written in **bold letters** are the most important ones, as they represent the **basic forms**.

Suffixes Cyrillic/Classical		name/ basic suffixes	page
−ø	−ø	AsS(ordinary)	131
−ø	−ø	VoS (active)	116
−ø	−ø	PTS (command)	177
а			
−аа[4]		RS	108
−аа[4]		VoS (causative)	121
−аа[4]		NDS (progressive present)	145
−аад[4]		cVDS (anterior)	159
−аад[4]		NuS (approximate)	247
−аар[4]		CS (instrumental)	93
−аарай[4]		PTS (demand)	179
−аас[4]		CS (ablative)	90
−аасай[4]		PTS (hope)	182
−аач[4]		PTS (request)	178
б			
−бал[4]		sVDS (conditional)	161
−балз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
−бол		−бал[4] (sVDS)	161
−бөл		−бал[4] (sVDS)	161
−бэл		−бал[4] (sVDS)	161
−бэлз		−балз[2] (AsS)	135
в			
−в		AwS (intensifying)	219
−в		TTS (past tense)	186
−вал[4]		sVDS (conditional)	161
−валз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
−вол		−вал[4] (sVDS)	161
−вөл		−вал[4] (sVDS)	161
−втар[4]		AwS (diminutive)	218
−втор		−втар[4] (AwS)	218
−втөр		−втар[4] (AwS)	218
−втэр		−втар[4] (AwS)	218
−вэл		−вал[4] (sVDS)	161
−вэлз[2]		−валз[2] (AsS)	135
−вч		sVDS (concessive)	162
г			
−г		PTS (permission)	181
−г		CS (accusative)	86
−га[4]		VoS (causative)	120
−(г)аа[4]		−аа[4] (RS/NDS)	
−(г)аад[4]		−аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
−(г)аар[4]		−аар[4] (CS)	93
(г)аарай[4]		−аарай[4] (PTS)	179
−(г)аас[4]		−аас[4] (CS)	90
(г)аасай[4]		−аасай[4] (PTS)	182
−(г)аач[4]		−аач[4] (PTS)	178
−галз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
−гана[4]		AsS (repetitive)	135
−гд		VoS (passive)	124
−(г)ийн		−ийн (CS)	79
−го		−га[4] (VoS)	120
−гоно		−гана[4] (AsS)	135
−гө		−га[4] (VoS)	120
−гөнө		−гана[4] (AsS)	135
−ггун[2]		PTS (appeal)	181
−ггүн		−ггун[2] (PTS)	181
−(г)уу−зай[2]		−уузай[2] (PTS)	180
−(г)уут[2]		−уут[2] (VDS)	170
−(г)уушгай[2]		−уушгай[2] (AwDS)	154
−гч		NDS ('doer')	149
−гэ		−га[4] (VoS)	120
−гэлз		−галз[2] (AsS)	135
−гэнэ		−гана[4] (AsS)	135
д			
−д		PS	75
−д		CS (dative-locative)	83
−д		VoS (passive)	124

−даг⁴		**NDS (indefinite present)**	**144**
−дахь		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
−дог		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дөг		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дугаар²		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
−дуу²		**AwS (diminutive)**	**218**
−дүгээр		−дугаар² (NuS)	241
−дүү		−дуу² (AwS)	218
−дэг		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дэх		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
е			
−е		**PTS (intention)**	**175**
ё			
−ё		**PTS (intention)**	**175**
ж			
−ж		**cVDS (simultaneous)**	**157**
−жээ		**TTS (past tense)**	**185**
з			
−з(а)на⁴		**AsS (temporary)**	**132**
−з(о)но		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
−з(ө)нө		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
−з(э)нэ		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
и			
−иа²		−аа⁴ (RS/NDS)	
−иад²		−аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
−иарай²		−аарай⁴ (PTS)	179
−иач²		−аач⁴ (PTS)	178
−ий		**CS (genitive)**	**79**
−ийг		**CS (accusative)**	**86**
−ийн		**CS (genitive)**	**79**
−иар²		−аар² (CS)	93
−иас²		−аас⁴ (CS)	90
−иасай²		−аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
−иуд²		−ууд² (PS)	73
−иузай²		−уузай² (PTS)	180
−иул²		−уул² (VoS/NuS)	
л			
−л		**AsS (repetitive)**	**135**
−лаа⁴		**TTS (past tense)**	**187**
−лга⁴		**VoS (causative)**	**119**
−лго		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лгө		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лгэ		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лд		**VoS (adversative)**	**127**
−лз		**AsS (repetitive)**	**135**
−лоо		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
−лөө		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
−лтай³		**AwDS (worthwhile)**	**155**
−лтой		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
−лтэй		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
−лттүй		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
(!)луу²		**CS (directive)**	**99**
(!)лүү		(!)луу² (CS)	99
−лц		**VoS (communal)**	**126**
−лээ		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
м			
−маа−жин⁴		**sVDS (excluding)**	**172**
−маар⁴		**AwDS (wish)**	**151**
−магц⁴		**sVDS (succeeding)**	**164**
−м(гүй)		**AwDS (worthwhile)**	**155**
−могц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
−моо−жин		−маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
−моор		−маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
−мөгц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
−мөө−жин		−маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
−мөөр		−маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
−мэгц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164

~мэ ~жин		~маажин[4] (sVDS)	172
~мэр		~маар[4] (AwDS)	151
Н			
~н		**cVDS (associative)**	**158**
~н		**CS (genitive)**	**79**
~на[4]		**TTS (present/ future)**	**190/ 191**
(!) нар		**PS**	**74**
~нгаа[4]		**sVDS (opportunity)**	**171**
~нгоо		~нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
~нгөө		~нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
~нгуут[2]		**sVDS (succeeding)**	**170**
~нгүүт		~нгуут[2] (sVDS)	170
~нгээ		~нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
~(н)ууд[2]		~ууд[2] (PS)	73
~(н)үүд		~ууд[2] (PS)	73
О			
~оо		~аа[4] (RS/VoS/NDS)	
~ood		~аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
~оор		~аар[4] (CS)	93
~оос		~аас[4] (CS)	90
~оосой		~аасай[4] (PTS)	182
~ооч		~аач[4] (PTS)	178
Ө			
~өө		~аа[4] (RS/VoS/NDS)	
~өөд		~аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
~өөр		~аар[4] (CS)	93
~өөс		~аас[4] (CS)	90
~өөсэй		~аасай[4] (PTS)	182
~өөч		~аач[4] (PTS)	178
Р			
(!)руу[2]		**CS (directive)**	**99**
(!)рүү		руу[2] (CS)	99

С			
~с		**PS**	**75**
~саар[4]		**sVDS (progressive)**	**168**
~сан[4]		**NDS (past tense)**	**143**
~сон		~сан[4] (NDS)	143
~соор		~саар[4] (sVDS)	168
~сөн		~сан[4] (NDS)	143
~сөөр		~саар[4] (sVDS)	168
~сугай[2]		**PTS (decision)**	**176**
~сүгэй		~сугай[2] (PTS)	176
~схий		**AsS (quick)**	**132**
~сэн		~сан[4] (NDS)	143
~сээр		~саар[4] (sVDS)	168
Т			
~т		**CS (dative-locative)**	**83**
~т		**VoS (passive)**	**124**
~таа[4]		**NuS (multiplying)**	**249**
~тай[3]		**CS (comitative)**	**97**
~тал[4]		**sVDS (limiting)**	**167**
~той		~тай[3] (CS)	97
~тол		~тал[4] (sVDS)	167
~тоо		~таа[4] (NuS)	249
~тол		~тал[4] (sVDS)	167
~тоо		~таа[4] (NuS)	249
~тугай[2]		**PTS (blessing)**	**183**
~түгэй		~тугай[2] (PTS)	183
~тэй		~тай[3] (CS)	97
~тэл		~тал[4] (sVDS)	167
~тээ		~таа[4] (NuS)	249
У			
~ууд[2]		**PS**	**73**
~уузай[2]		**PTS (admonition)**	**180**
~уул[2]		**VoS (causative)**	**118**

−уул^2		NuS (collective)	244
−уур^2		AwS (movement)	224
−уут^2		sVDS (succeeding)	170
−ууш−тай^2		AwDS (necessity)	154
Ү			
−ҮҮд		−ууд^2 (PS)	73
−ҮҮзэй		−уузай^2 (PTS)	180
−ҮҮл		−уул^2 (VoS/NuS)	
−ҮҮр		−уур^2 (AwS)	224
−ҮҮт		−уут^2 (sVDS)	170
−ҮҮш−тэй		−ууштай^2 (AwDS)	154
Х			
−х		CbS (Possessive/Local)	101/102
−х		NDS (future tense)	147
−(х)аа^4		−аа^4 (RS)	108
−хаар^4		sVDS (intending)	166
−хан^4		CbS (collective)	103
−х(и)		CbS (attributive)	104
−хлаар^4		sVDS (logically succeeding)	165
−хлоор		−хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
−хлөөр		−хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
−хлээр		−хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
−хон		−хан^4 (AwDS)	103
−хоор		−хаар^4 (sVDS)	166
−хөн		−хан^4 (AwDS)	103
−хөөр		−хаар^4 (sVDS)	166
−хуйц^2		AwDS (possibility)	153
−хүйц		−хуйц^2 (AwDS)	153
−хэн		−хан^4 (AwS)	103
−хэр		−хаар^4 (sVDS)	166

Ц			
−цгаа^4		AsS (collective)	134
−цгоо		−цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
−цгөө		−цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
−цгээ		−цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
Ч			
−ч		cVDS (simultaneous)	157
−чих		AsS (completed)	133
−чуулд^2		PS	74
−чуулл^2		PS	74
−чүүд		−чуулд^2 (PS)	74
−чүүл		−чуулл^2 (PS)	74
−чээ		TTS (past tense)	185
Ш			
−(г)ш		AwS (direction)	223
−шгүй		AwDS (negative)	155
Ъ			
−ъё		−е (PTS)	175
−ъя		−я (PTS)	175
Ы			
−ы		CS (genitive)	79
−ыг		CS (accusative)	86
−ын		CS (genitive)	79
Ь			
−ье		−е (PTS)	175
Э			
−ээ		−аа^4 (RS/VoS/NDS)	
−ээд		−аад^4 (cVDS/NuS)	
−ээр		−аар^4 (CS)	93
−ээс		−аас^4 (CS)	90
−ээсэй		−аасай^4 (PTS)	182
−ээч		−аач^4 (PTS)	178
Я			
я		PTS (intention)	175

4. THE STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL SYSTEM OF RELATIONAL SUFFIXES

In the introduction to Part III on page 71, we mentioned a **system**, after which the inflectional suffixes are categorized. We believe it's important to have a good idea of this system in order to be able to build syntagmas and sentences. Especially to Western people who are used to a completely different sentence structure, this system should prove helpful. To understand the following two tables, their system chart and all abbreviations, we explain here briefly the terminology which has been used:

Inflectional suffixes:
Inflectional suffixes give the word no lexical, but a **grammatical** meaning

Relational suffixes:
Relational suffixes are those inflectional suffixes which can **express a relationship** between words.

Sentence:
A sentence is an independent **unit of speech** which has one common intonation.

Syntagma:
Syntagma is a **particular part** of a sentence:
e.g. 'to give to someone'; 'to put on the table'; 'to be good in math'.
Syntagmas are **built through relationships between words**. Such relationships are expressed by suffixes.

Adwords:
Adwords **describe** nouns, verbs or adwords. Adjectives, adverbs, and numerals belong to the category of adwords.

They can be used	• **nominal** (Aw^N)	as in:	a **good** horse, **three** books,
	• **verbal** (Aw^V)	as in:	to sing **well**, to go **twice**

Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas: Table 1 (compare with page 421)

No. in table	Abbreviations	Explanations	Examples	Category	Page
1.1	**Aw-W**	**adword - word**		**adwords**	**211ff**
1.2	**N-W**	**noun -word**		**CS's**	**78ff**
1.3	**V-W**	**verb - word**		**DS's**	**139ff**
1.1.1	Aw-Aw	adword - adword	нэн (*-ø1*) сайн маш (*-ø1*) харамсалтай	**adwords**	**211ff**
1.1.2	Aw-N/V	adword - noun/ verb	сайн (*-ø2*) морь сайн (*-ø2*) дуула-	**adjectives/ adverbs**	**212ff** **221ff**
1.1.3	Aw-N	adword - noun	өндөр (*-ø3*) хүн хар (*-ø3*) машин	**adjectives**	**212ff**
1.1.4	Aw-V	adword - verb	сайтар (*-ø4*) бодо- дандаа (*-ø4*) ажилла-	**adverbs**	**221ff**
1.2.1	N-N	noun - noun	ахын ном ширээний хөл	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.2	N-Aw^{N}	noun - adword in nominal function	усны тунгалаг нарны эрт	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.3	N-V	noun - verb	хүнд ег- хүнийг хара- хүнээс асуу- хүнээр хийлгэ- хүнтэй ява- хүн руу очи-	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **86ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.2.4	N-Aw^{V}	noun - adword in verbal function	тоонд сайн уснаас гүн малаар баян бидэнтэй сайн говь руу муу	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.3.1	V-N	verb - noun	явсан хүн явдаг хүн яваа хүн явах хүн явагч хүн	**NDS's**	**143** **144** **145** **147** **149**
1.3.2	V-Aw^{N}	verb - adword in nominal function	явмаар сайхан явахуйц чухал явуштай гоё явашгүй муухай үзэлгүй муухай ангам халуун	**AwDS's**	**151** **153** **154** **155** **155** **155**
1.3.3	V-V	verb - verb	худалдаж ав- гүйн гар- очоод уулза- ирвэл ява- яаравч ажилла- ирмэгц уулза- явахлаар ирэ- сурахаар яв- үхтэл ай- явсаар ирэ- ирэнгүүт унта- явангаа ярь- сурмаажин мэдэ-	**VDS's**	**157** **158** **159** **161** **162** **164** **165** **166** **167** **168** **170** **171** **172**
1.3.4	V-Aw^{V}	verb - adword in verbal function	ирвэл сайн явавч муу явахлаар хол сурмаажин чухал	**VDS's**	**161** **162** **165** **172**

Relational Suffixes which build Sentences: Table 2 (compare with page 421)

	Explanation	Examples	Page
2.	**syntactic part - subject**		
2.1	**syntagma - subject (RS)**	Би ээжтэйгээ хамт явсан. Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ цайгаа уусан.	**108ff** **173**
2.2	**predicate - subject**		**371ff**
2.2.1	Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (**PTS's**)		**175ff**
2.2.2	Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (**TTS's**)		**184ff**
2.2.1.1	PTS's of 1st person	Би явъя. Хөдөө аж ахуйг хурдан хөгжүүлсүгэй!	**175** **176**
2.2.1.2	PTS's of 2nd person	Гар! (~ø) Чи яваач. Номоо уншаарай! Гал гаруузай! Та суугтун!	**177** **178** **179** **180** **181**
2.2.1.3	PTS's of 3rd person	Тэр үзвэл үзэг! Тэд ирээсэй! Манай орон мандтугай!	**181** **182** **183**
2.2.2.1	TTS's of past tense	Би хоолоо идсэн. Орой болжээ. Аав хөдөө явав. Тэр явлаа.	**184** **185** **186** **187**
2.2.2.2	TTS's of present tense	Өвөл цас ордог. Надад талх байгаа. Ус хөлдөгийг бид мэднэ.	**188** **189** **190**
2.2.2.3	TTS of future tense	Би маргааш явна.	**191**

Table 1: Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas

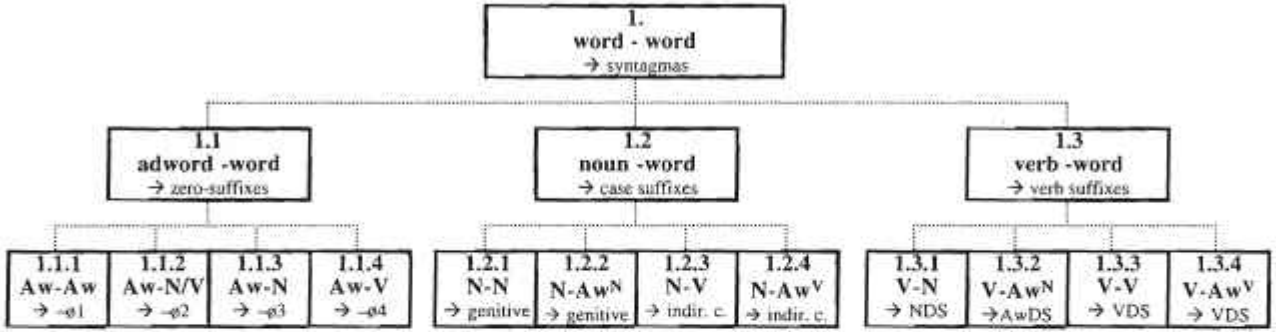
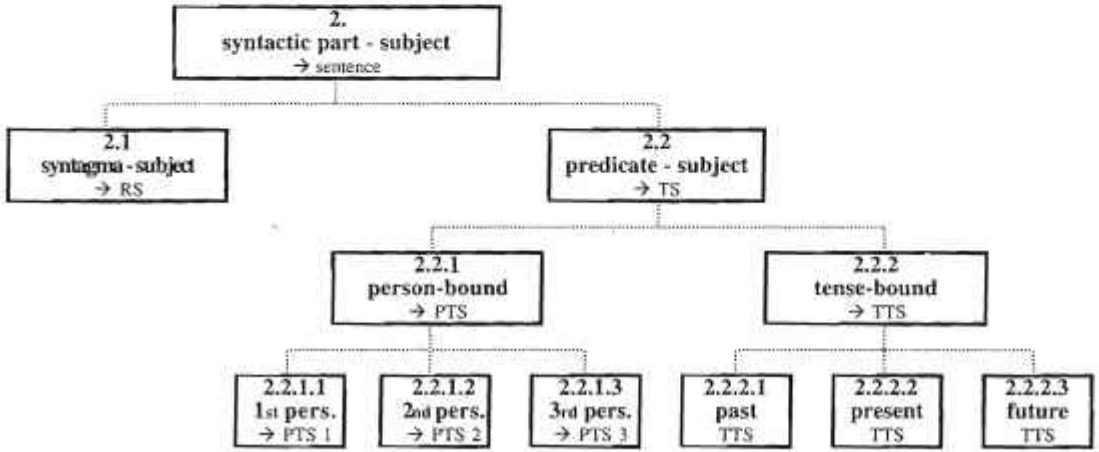


Table 2: Relational Suffixes which build Sentences



5. MONGOLIAN EQUIVALENT OF ENGLISH TENSES

As you study this chart, please **refer to the following paragraphs in Part III** of this book:
p. 136 (analytically expressed aspects); p. 139 (NDS's); p. 184 (TTS's); p. 374/195 (building compound predicates)
Exceptions are marked with "!!"

	PRESENT ОДОО ЦАГ -даг (-на)	***PAST*** ӨНГӨРСӨН ЦАГ -сан -жэ -лаа -в	***FUTURE*** ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ -на -х (болно)	***FUTURE IN THE PAST*** ӨНГӨРСНИЙ ҮҮД-НЭЭС ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ -х байсан
INDEFI-NITE ТОДОР-ХОЙГҮЙ	•Би бичдэг. *I write.* •Та бичдэг үү? *Do you write?* •Би бичдэггүй. *I don't write.*	•Би бичсэн. *I wrote.* •Та бичсэн үү? *Did you write?* •Би бичсэнгүй. *I didn't write.*	•Би бичнэ. *I shall write.* •Та бичих үү? *Will you write?* •Би бичихгүй. *I shall not write.*	•Би бичих байсан. *I should write.* •Та бичих байсан уу? *Should you write?* •Би бичихгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't write.*
-ж бай- ***PROGRE-SSIVE*** ҮРГЭЛЖ-ЛЭХ	•Би бичиж байна. *I'm writing.* •Та бичиж байна уу? *Are you writing?* •Би бичихгүй байна. *I'm not writing.*	•Би бичиж байсан. *I was writing.* •Та бичиж бай-сан уу? *Were you writing?* •Би бичиж байсангүй. *I wasn't writing.*	•Би бичиж байх болно. *I shall be writing.* •Та бичиж байх уу? *Will you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй. *I shall not be writing.*	•Би бичиж байх байсан. *I should be writing.* •Та бичиж байх байсан уу? *Should you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't be writing.*
-чихсэн бай- ***PERFECT*** ТӨГС	•Би биччихсэн байна. *I have written.* •Та биччихсэн байна уу? *Have you written?* •Би бичээгүй байна. *I haven't written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байсан. *I had written.* •Та биччихсэн байсан уу? *Had you written?* •Би бичээгүй байсан. *I hadn't written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байх болно. *I shall have written.* •Та биччихсэн байх уу? *Will you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх болно. *I shall not have written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байх байсан. *I should have written.* •Та биччихсэн байх байсан уу? *Should you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't have written.* !!
-саар бай- ***PERFECT PROGRE-SSIVE*** ТӨГС ҮРГЭЛЖ-ЛЭХ	•Би бичсээр байна. *I have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байна уу? *Have you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байна. *I haven't been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байсан. *I had been writing.* •Та бичсээр байсан уу? *Had you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байсан. *I hadn't been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байх болно. *I shall have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байх уу? *Will you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байх болно. *I shall not have been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байх байсан. *I should have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байх байсан уу? *Should you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй бай-саар байх байсан. *I shouldn't have been writing.*

6. TABLE OF CONTENTS IN MONGOLIAN

Монгол гарчиг

// ЖЭЖЭГ : Удиртгал (х. 1–40)

1. Монгол хэл, түүний хувьсал хөгжил (х. 2)

1.1 Монгол хэлний ерөнхий шинж (х. 2)
1.2 Олон монгол хэл аялгуу (х. 2)
1.3 Сонгодог бичгийн хэл хийгэд орчин цагийн утга зохиолын хэл (х. 3)

2. Монгол бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)

2.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)
2.1.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн тойм хүснэгт (х. 4)
2.1.2 Олон дуудлагат цагаан толгой (х.5)
2.1.3 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн нарийвчилсан хүснэгт (х.6)
2.1.4 Эгшиг авиа (х. 7)
2.1.4.1 Эгшгийн зохицол
2.1.4.2 Эгшгийн хувьсал
2.1.4.2.1 Эгшгийн ижилсэл
2.1.4.2.1.1 Дэвшин ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.1.2 Ухран ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.2 Урт эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.2.1 Авианы нийлэмжээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.2 Богино эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.3 Нийлмэл эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.3 Хос эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.3.1 Үгийн дундах хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.3.2 Үгийн эцсийн хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4 Балархай эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4.1 Эгшиг сулрах нь
2.1.4.2.4.2 Эгшиг гээгдэх нь
2.1.5 Гийгүүлэгч авиа (х. 13)
2.1.5.1 Чанга, сул гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.2 Дэвсгэр үсэг
2.1.5.3 Эр үгэн дэх зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.4 Гийгүүлэгчийн хувьсал
2.1.6 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 15)
2.1.7 Гадаад үгийн галиг (х. 16)
2.1.7.1 Галигийн хүснэгт
2.1.7.2 Галигийн жишээ
2.1.8 Зөв бичгийн дүрэм (х. 17)
2.1.8.1 Залгаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2 Жийрэглэх эгшгийг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2.1 Ерөнхий дүрэм
2.1.8.2.2 Тайлал

2.2 Кирилл бичгийн цагаан толгой (х.19)
2.2.1 Эгшиг авиа (х. 20)
2.2.1.1 Эгшгийн ангилал
2.2.1.2 Эгшиг зохицох ёс
2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгч (х. 21)
2.2.2.1 Хатуу, зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгчийн ангилал
2.2.2.2.1 Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.2.2 Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч

2.2.2.3 Гийгүүлэгчийн байр
2.2.3 Тэмдэг (х. 21)
2.2.3.1 Хатуугийн тэмдэг
2.2.3.2 Зөөлний тэмдэг
2.2.4 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 22)
2.2.5 Дүрмүүд (х. 22)
2.2.5.1 Зөв дуудах дүрэм
2.2.5.2 Зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.1 Үндсэн дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2 Хувилгалын дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.1 Гол дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.2 Тайлал дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.3 «-ла» дагаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.3.1 «-ла» дагаврын тайлал дүрэм
2.2.5.2.4 Зөөлний тэмдэг «и» болох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.5 «-ж/-ч» нөхцлийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.6 Том үсгийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.7 Үг товчлох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.8 Үг таслах дүрэм

2.3 Цагаан толгойнуудын харьцуулсан хүснэгт (х. 31)

3. Монгол хэлний үгийн бүтэц (х. 33)

3.1 Язгуур (х. 33)
3.1.1 Идэвхтэй (амьд) язгуур
3.1.2 Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуур

3.2 Үндэс (х. 36)

3.3 Залгавар (х. 37)
3.3.1 Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)
3.3.2 Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)
3.3.2.1 Нэр үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл
3.3.2.2 Үйл үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл

II ХЭСЭГ: Үгсийн сан (х. 41-68)

1. Үг бүтэх ёс (х. 41)

1.1 Дагавар залгаж үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1 Нэр үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.1.2 Үйл үгээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.2 Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь (х. 49)
1.1.2.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.3 Үйл үг бүтэх нь (х. 54)

1.2 Нийлмэл үгээр үг бүтэх нь (х. 57)
1.2.1 Хоршоо нийлмэл үг
1.2.2Хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.1 Хамжсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.2 Найрсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.3 Давтсан хоршоо нийлмэл үг
2. Үгсийн сангийн бүрэлдэхүүн (х. 60)

2.1 Өвөрмөц хэллэг (х. 60)

2.2 Ижил үгс (х. 62)

2.2.1 Үгсийн сангийн ижил үгс
2.2.1.1 Үгсийн сангийн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.1.2 Үгсийн сангийн үүсмэл ижил үгс
2.2.2 Үгзүйн ижил үгс
2.2.2.1 Үгзүйн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.2.2 Үгзүйн үүсмэл ижил үгс

2.3 Ойролцоо үгс (х. 63)
2.3.1 Найруулгын ойролцоо үгс
2.3.2 Гадаад хэлнээс орсон ойролцоо үгс
2.3.3 Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс
2.3.4 Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үгс

2.4 Ёс заншлын үгс (х. 65)

2.5 Зээлдсэн үгс (х. 66)
2.5.1 Монголжсон харь үгс
2.5.2 Янз бүрийн хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.1 Самгард, уйгур хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.2 Арав, Перс хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.3 Хятад, манж хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Төвд хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Европын хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс

III ХЭСЭГ: Үг зүй (х. 70– 358)

I. Бодит үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1. Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1.1 Нэр үг (х. 72)

1.1.1.1 Нэр үгийн олон тоо (х. 72)
1.1.1.1.1 Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)
1.1.1.1.1.1 «–ууд²» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.2 «–чууд², –чуул²» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.3 «нар» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.4 «–д» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.5 «–с» ОТН
1.1.1.1.2 ОТН–гүйгээр олон тооны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.1 Тоо илтгэсэн үгсээр олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.2 Үгсийг давтан олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.3 Үйл үгийн айгаар олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.4 Багц ойлголтоор олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.5 Хийсвэр ойлголт
1.1.1.2 Нэр үгийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1 Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)
1.1.1.2.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд буй асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгал (х. 79)
1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Нөхцлүүд (–ын, –ийн, –ы, –ий, –н), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.3 Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал (х. 83)
1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Нөхцлүүд (–д, –т), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.4 Заахын тийн ялгал (х. 86)
1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Нөхцлүүд (–ыг, –ийг, –г), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Үл ялгах ёс

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Ялгах ёс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Хэрэглээний шатлал
1.1.1.2.1.5 Гарахын тийн ялгал (х. 90)
1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Нөхцлүүд (–аас[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.6 Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 93)
1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Нөхцлүүд (–аар[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7 Хамтрахын тийн ялгал (х. 97)
1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Нөхцлүүд (–тай[3]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 Жинхэнэ хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 Хуурамч хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.8 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 99)
1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Нөхцлүүд (руу[2], луу[2]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.8.4 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгалын шинэ хэлбэр
1.1.1.2.2 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ) (х. 101)
1.1.1.2.2.1 Хамаатуулах утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–х)
1.1.1.2.2.2 Үсгийн сангийн "гэр" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–х)
1.1.1.2.2.3 Үсгийн сангийн "хүмүүс" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–хан[4])
1.1.1.2.2.4 Харьцааны утгыг өөрчлөгч хэлэгүйн хэрэглүүр болох ТЯЗ (–х/–хи)
1.1.1.2.3 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС) (х. 106)
1.1.1.2.3.1 ТЯС (минь, чинь, тань, маань, нь), дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.3.2 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3 Эгэх нөхцөл «–аа[4]» (ЭН) (х. 108)
1.1.1.3.1 Эгэх нөхцлийн үүрэг
1.1.1.3.2 ЭН, дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3.4 ТЯС–тай харьцуулах нь

1.1.2 Үйл үг (х. 113)

1.1.2.1 Үйл үгийн хувилал
1.1.2.1.1 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН) (х. 115)
1.1.2.1.1.1 Үйлдэх хэв (–ø)
1.1.2.1.1.2 Үйлдүүлэх хэв
1.1.2.1.1.2.1 «–уул[2]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.2 «–лга[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3 «–га[4], –аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 «–га[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 «–аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Үйлдүүлэх хэвийн үүргүүд
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Эс тусах хэлбэрийг тусах хэлбэр болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдүүлэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдэгдэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.3 Үйлдэгдэх хэв «–гд»
1.1.2.1.1.4 Үйлдэлцэх хэв «–лц»
1.1.2.1.1.5 Үйлдэлдэх хэв «–лд»
1.1.2.1.1.6 Үйл үгийн хэвийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.1.7 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцлийг давхар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.2 Үйл үгийн байдлын нөхцөл (БН) (х. 131)
1.1.2.1.2.1 Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь (БН–тэй)
1.1.2.1.2.1.1 «–схий»: хоромхон үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.2 «–зана[4]»: түр үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.3 «–чих»: төгс үйлдэх

1.1.2.1.2.1.4 «–цгаа^4»: олноор үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.5 «–л»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.6 «–лз, балз^2/ валз^2, галз^2, гана^4»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.2 Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.2.1.2.2.1 «–ж/ ч бай–»: Үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.2 «–(чих)аад^4 бай–/ –(чих)сан^4 бай–»: Төгс байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.3 «–саар^4 бай–»: Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэвийн ба байдлын нөхцлийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3 Үйл үгийн төлөв (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1 Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Нэр үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 НТоН–ийн үүрэг
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Өнгөрсөн цагт НТоН «–сан^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Тодорхойгүй одоо цагт НТоН «–даг^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Үргэлжлэх одоо цагт НТоН «–аа^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Ирээдүй цагт НТоН «–х»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 Үйлдэгчийг заах НТоН «–гч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТТоН) (х. 151)
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Хүсэх ТToН «–маар^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Чадавхи заах ТToН «–хуйц^2»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Санал болгох ТToН «–уушгай^2»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Бусад ТToН «–шгүй, –лгай^3, –лгүй, –м, –мгүй»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Үйл үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ҮТоН) (х. 156)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох ҮТоН (ЗэҮТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Зэрэгцэх ЗэҮТоН «–ж/–ч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Хам ЗэҮТоН «–н»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Урьдчилах ЗэҮТоН «–аад^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 ЗэҮТоН–ийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Захируулан холбох ҮТоН (ЗаҮТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Болзох ЗаҮТоН «–бал^4, –вал^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Дутагдах ЗаҮТоН «–вч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Бэлтгэх ЗаҮТоН «–магц^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Дагалдах ЗаҮТоН «–хлаар^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Зорилгын ЗаҮТоН «–хаар^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Үгтуулах ЗаҮТоН «–тал^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Үргэлжлэх ЗаҮТоН «–саар^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Далимдах ЗаҮТоН «–нгуут^2»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Дашрамдах ЗаҮТоН «–нгаа^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Онцгойлох ЗаҮТоН «–маажин^4»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 ЗаҮТоН–ийн дараа эгэх нөхцөл хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 ЗаҮТоН–ийн нэгтгэсэн хүснэгт
1.1.2.1.3.2 Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 Хүсэх БТөН «–я^3» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 Даалган хүсэх БТөН «–сугай^2» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 Шууд захирах БТөН «–ø» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 Тулган шаардах, гуйн хүсэх БТөН «–аач^4» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 Сануулан хүсэх, зөвлөн захирах БТөН «–аарай^4» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН «–уузай^2» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН «–гтун^2» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 Тушаах, зөвшөөх БТөН «–г» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 Гүнээ хүсэх БТөН «–аасай^4» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН «–тугай^2» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН) (х. 184)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 НToН «–сан^4» ЦТөН–ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (ерөнхий өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 ЦТөН «–жээ/ –чээ» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 ЦТөН «–в» (өнгөрсөн цаг)

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 ЦТөН «-лаа[4]» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 НТоН «-даг[4]» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (тодорхойгүй одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 НТоН «-аа[4]» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (үргэлжлэх одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 ЦТөН «-на[4]» (одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 ЦТөН «-на[4]» (ирээдүй цаг)
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгийг үүргээр нь ангилах нь (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1 Гол үйл үг (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1.1 «Бай-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "there are"-гаар буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "to be"-гээр буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.2 «Бол-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2 Туслах үйл үг (х. 194)
1.1.2.2.2.1 «Бай-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Хүсэх төлөв илэрхийлэх үүргээр
1.1.2.2.2.2 «Бол-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.3 Дутмаг туслах үйл үг
1.1.2.2.2.3.1 «ажээ, атал, аваас»
1.1.2.2.2.3.2 «бий, буй, билээ»
1.1.2.2.3 Баймж үйл үг ба баймж бүтэц (х. 201)
1.1.2.2.3.1 Баймж үйл үг «чада-»
1.1.2.2.3.2 Баймж бүтэц
1.1.2.2.3.2.1 «... -х ...-тай/-гүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.2 «... -байх(аа)»
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 «... юм байна»
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 «... байлтай/байлгүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.5 «...-сан бол-»
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 «... -х гэсэн юм»
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 «... бололтой»
1.1.2.2.3.2.8 «... -х юмсан/ ... -хсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.9 «... -сан юмсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 «... -сансан/ ... -дагсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 «... -хаас даа»
1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Баймж бүтэц ба баймж залгаврыг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.2.4 Гол үйл үгийг баймж уттаар хэрэглэх нь (х. 208)
1.1.2.2.4.1 «-ж/-ч бол-» баймж үйл үг
1.1.2.2.4.2 Бусад баймж үйл үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.2.2.5 Холбоос үйл үг «гэ-» (х. 210)

1.1.3 Тэмдэг үг (х. 211)

1.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг (х. 211)
1.1.3.1.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн тодорхойлолт
1.1.3.1.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн өгүүлбэрдэх үүрэг
1.1.3.1.2.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.2.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг өгүүлэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дараалал
1.1.3.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дараалын зүй тогтол
1.1.3.1.4 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн ерийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн харьцуулсан зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Гарахын т/я-тай нэр үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Гарахын т/я-тай нэрийн тэмдэг үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.3 «адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ» гэсэн дагавар үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.4 «илүү, арай» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн давуу зэрэг

1.1.3.1.4.3.1 «хамгийн, туйлын» гэсэн үгсээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Харьяалахын т/я–тай давтан хэрэглэсэн нөрүүгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн утгыг өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1 Тэмдэг үг бүтээх залгавар (ТҮЗ) залгаж өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «–хан[4]»
1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «–(а)втар[4] , –дуу[2]»
1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ «–в»
1.1.3.1.5.2 Тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.1 «маш, нэн, тун, даан» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.2 «хэтэрхий, дэндүү, дааны» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Бусад тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.2 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг (х. 221)
1.1.3.2.1 Анхдагч үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2 Идэвхгүй язгуурт үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.2.2.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.2.3 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1 ТҮЗ –аар бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Чиг заах ТҮЗ «–(г)ш»
1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ «–уур[2]»
1.1.3.2.3.2 Үгс хоршиж бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.3 Тэмдэг үгээр бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.4 Үйлийн тэмдэг үгийн утгазүйн ангилал
1.1.3.2.4.1 Орон байр заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.2 Цаг хугацаа заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.3 Байдал, шинж тэмдэг заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.3 Тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.1 Тооны үг, тэдгээрийн нөхцлийн (ТҮН) хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2 Үндсэн тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Нийлмэл үндсэн тооны үгийг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг холбоосын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Үндсэн тооны үгийн өргөн хэрэглээ
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Огноо
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Цаг
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Утас
1.1.3.3.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.3 Дэс тооны үг (х. 240)
1.1.3.3.3.1 Дэс тооны үг үүсгэх «–дугаар[2], –дахь/–дэх» дагавар
1.1.3.3.3.2 Дэс тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Сар (–дугаар[2])
1.1.3.3.3.2.2 «–дугаар[2]»-ыг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Гариг (–дахь, –дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 «–дахь/–дэх»–ийг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Хаяг (–дугаар[2], –дахь/–дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Ром тоог «–дугаар[2]»–ын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4 Хам тооны үг (х. 244)
1.1.3.3.4.1 Хам тооны үг бүтээх «–уул[2]» дагавар
1.1.3.3.4.2 Хам тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4.3 Хам тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.5 Тойм тооны үг (х. 246)
1.1.3.3.5.1 Тойм тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.5.2 Тойм тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Тойм тооны үг үүсгэх «–аад[4]» дагавар

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 «гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим» гэсэн дагавар үгсийг тойм тооны үгийн уттаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Тооны үгийг хоршиж тойм тооны үгийн уттаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.3 Тойм тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.6 Давтах тооны үг (х. 249)
1.1.3.3.6.1 Давтах тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.6.2 Давтах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Давтах тооны үг үүсгэх «–таа[4]» дагавар
1.1.3.3.6.2.2 «дахин, удаа» гэсэн үгсийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.7 Хязгаарлах тооны үг (х. 250)
1.1.3.3.7.1 Хязгаарлах тооны үг үүсгэх «–хан[4]» дагавар
1.1.3.3.7.2 Хязгаарлах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.8 Түгээл тооны үг (х. 251)
1.1.3.3.8.1 Түгээл тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.9 Тооны үгийг тоо бичлэгт хэрэглэх нь (х. 252)
1.1.3.3.9.1 Аравтын бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.2 Энгийн бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.3 Хувь
1.1.3.3.9.4 Дөрвөн аргын тоо
1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Нэмэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Хасах
1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Үржүүлэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Хуваах

1.2. Төлөөний үг (х. 255)

1.2.1 Төлөөний үгийн бүтэцзүйн ангилал (х. 255)
1.2.1.1 Нэрийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.2 Үйлийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.3 Тэмдгийн төлөөний үг
1.2.2 Төлөөний үгийн уттазүйн ангилал (х. 256)
1.2.2.1 Биеийн төлөөний үг (х. 256)
1.2.2.1.1 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.1.2 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хувилал
1.2.2.1.3 Биеийн төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.1.3.1 «би»
1.2.2.1.3.2 «чи»
1.2.2.1.3.3 «та»
1.2.2.1.3.4 «тэр»
1.2.2.1.3.5 «бид (нар)»
1.2.2.1.3.6 «та нар»
1.2.2.1.3.7 «тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.2 Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг (х. 260)
1.2.2.3 Эгэх төлөөний үг (х. 261)
1.2.2.3.1 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг тийн ялгалаар хувилгах нь
1.2.2.3.2 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.3 Бусад тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.3 Бусад эгэх төлөөний үгс
1.2.2.4 Заах төлөөний үг (х. 264)
1.2.2.4.1 Заах төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.4.2 Заах төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.4.2.1 «энэ/ тэр/ эдгээр/ тэдгээр/ эд (нар)/ тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.4.2.2 «ийм/ тийм/ иймэрхүү/ тиймэрхүү»
1.2.2.4.2.3 «өнөө(төх)/ нөгөө(төх)/ өнөөдүүл/ нөгөөдүүл»
1.2.2.4.2.4 «өдий/ төдий/ өчнөөн/ төчнөөн»
1.2.2.4.2.5 «ингэ–/ тэгэ–»
1.2.2.5 Асуух төлөөний үг (х. 268)
1.2.2.5.1 Асуух төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт

1.2.2.5.2 Асуух төлөөний үгийг харьцуулах нь
1.2.2.5.3 Асуух төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.5.3.1 «хэн»
1.2.2.5.3.2 «юу(н)»
1.2.2.5.3.3 «ямар»
1.2.2.5.3.4 «аль/алин»
1.2.2.5.3.5 «хэд(эн)»
1.2.2.5.3.6 «хичнээн»
1.2.2.5.3.7 «хэзээ/хэдийд»
1.2.2.5.3.8 «хаа(на)»
1.2.2.5.3.9 «хаашаа»
1.2.2.5.3.10 «хаанаас»
1.2.2.5.3.11 «хаагуур»
1.2.2.5.3.12 «хэр»
1.2.2.5.3.13 «хэрхэн»
1.2.2.5.3.14 «яаж»
1.2.2.5.3.15 «яагаад»
1.2.2.5.3.16 «хэрхи-»
1.2.2.5.3.17 «яа-»
1.2.2.5.3.18 Давтан хэрэглэж олон тооны утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
1.2.2.6 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг (х. 276)
1.2.2.6.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.6.2 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.6.2.1 «хэн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.2«юу ч»
1.2.2.6.2.3 «ямар ч»
1.2.2.6.2.4 «аль ч»
1.2.2.6.2.5 «хэд(эн) ч»
1.2.2.6.2.6 «хичнээн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.7 «хэзээ ч/хэдийд ч»
1.2.2.6.2.8 «хаана ч/хаанаас ч/хаашаа ч/хаагуур ч»
1.2.2.6.2.9 «яаж ч»
1.2.2.6.2.10 «яа- ч»

2. Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг (х. 282)

2.1. Дагавар үг (х. 282)

2.1.1 Дагавар үгийн тодорхойлолт (х. 282)
2.1.2 Дагавар үгийн бүтэцүйн ангилал (х. 282)
2.1.1.1 Жинхэнэ дагавар үг
2.1.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг дагавар үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
2.1.3 Дагавар үгийг хэрэглэх нь (х. 285)
2.1.3.1 Тэг нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 285)
2.1.3.1.1 «гаруй»
2.1.3.1.2 «шахам»
2.1.3.1.3 «орчим»
2.1.3.1.4 «гэхэд»
2.1.3.1.5 «дээр»
2.1.3.1.6 «доор»
2.1.3.1.7 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.1.8 «бүр/болгон»
2.1.3.1.9 «тутам»
2.1.3.1.10 «ёсоор»
2.1.3.1.11 «мэт»
2.1.3.1.12 «шиг»
2.1.3.1.13 «адил»
2.1.3.2 Харьяалахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 287)
2.1.3.2.1 «тулд»
2.1.3.2.2 «төлөө»
2.1.3.2.3 «турш»

2.1.3.2.4 «дагуу»
2.1.3.2.5 «чинээ»
2.1.3.2.6 «дэргэд»
2.1.3.2.7 «хооронд»
2.1.3.2.8 «хажууд»
2.1.3.2.9 «наана»
2.1.3.2.10 «цаана»
2.1.3.2.11 «дотор»
2.1.3.2.12 «ард»
2.1.3.2.13 «урд»
2.1.3.2.14 «уруу»
2.1.3.2.15 «өөд»
2.1.3.2.16 «дараа»
2.1.3.2.17 «эсрэг»
2.1.3.2.18 «дунд»
2.1.3.2.19 «ойролцоо»
2.1.3.2.20 «-уур» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.2.21 «тухай»
2.1.3.2.22 «талаар»
2.1.3.2.23 «гадна»
2.1.3.2.24 «хойно»
2.1.3.2.25 «өмнө»
2.1.3.2.26 «адил»
2.1.3.3 Өгөх оршихын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.3.1 «ойр»
2.1.3.4 Гарахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.4.1 «бусад»
2.1.3.4.2 «өөр»
2.1.3.4.3 «илүү»
2.1.3.4.4 «хол»
2.1.3.4.5 «(г)ш» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.4.6 «гадна»
2.1.3.4.7 «хойно»
2.1.3.4.8 «өмнө»
2.1.3.5 Хамтрахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.5.1 «адил»
2.1.3.6 НТоН-ийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.6.1 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.6.2 «бүр/болгон»
2.1.3.6.3 «тутам»
2.1.3.6.4 «ёсоор»
2.1.3.6.5 «мэт»
2.1.3.6.6 «шиг»
2.1.3.6.7 «тухай»
2.1.3.6.8 «талаар»

2.2 Холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.1.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.1.2.1 «ба»
2.2.1.2.2 «бөгөөд»
2.2.1.2.3 «-гүй»
2.2.1.2.4 «болон»
2.2.1.2.5 «ч, ...ч»
2.2.1.2.6 «(мөн) түүнчлэн»
2.2.1.2.7 «харин»
2.2.1.2.8 «гэвч»
2.2.1.2.9 «(зөвхөн) тодийгүй, мөн»
2.2.1.2.10 «тодий биш, (харин)»

2.2.1.2.11 «–аар барахгүй, (мөн)»
2.2.1.2.12 «буюу/юм уу»
2.2.1.2.13 «эсвэл (эсхүл)»
2.2.1.2.14 «эсвэл ... эсвэл»
2.2.1.2.15 «байхад, харин»
2.2.1.2.16 «байтугай/биттгий хэл/бүү хэл»
2.2.1.2.17 «гэхдээ» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2 Угсруулан холбох холбоос үг (х. 307)
2.2.2.1 Угсруулан холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.2.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.2.2.1 «гэ–»
2.2.2.2.2 «–г гэж»
2.2.2.2.3 «эсэх»
2.2.2.2.4 «...үү, үгүй юу гэдэг»
2.2.2.2.5 «юм шиг л»
2.2.2.2.6 «учир / учраас»
2.2.2.2.7 «тул»
2.2.2.2.8 «–аас болж»
2.2.2.2.9 «–хгүй + –(г)ээр»
2.2.2.2.10 «–х гэж»
2.2.2.2.11« –х + –ын тулд»
2.2.2.2.12 «–х + –ын өмнө»
2.2.2.2.13 «сан + –ы дараа»
2.2.2.2.14 «–сан + –ы дагуу»
2.2.2.2.15 «–сан + –аас хойш»
2.2.2.2.16 «–х хүртэл»
2.2.2.2.17 «байх үед/–х(а)д»
2.2.2.2.18 «–х бүрд/–х болгонд»
2.2.2.2.19 «–х + –тай зэрэг»
2.2.2.2.20 «–ж байх хооронд»
2.2.2.2.21 «–х завсар/–х зуур»
2.2.2.2.22 «(Хэрэв) ...–бал/–вал»
2.2.2.2.23 «(Хэрэв) ...–х тохиолдолд»
2.2.2.2.24 «(Хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд»
2.2.2.2.25 «Хэдийгээр ... боловч»
2.2.2.2.26 «–сан + –аар»
2.2.2.2.27 «–х/-сан тухай/ талаар» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2.2.28 «болохоор» (нэмсэн)
2.2.3 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үгс (х. 319)
2.2.3.1 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.3.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.3.2.1 «(Мөн)түүнчлэн»
2.2.3.2.2 «Түүнээс гадна»
2.2.3.2.3 «Түүгээр ч барахгүй»
2.2.3.2.4 «Тэгээд/Ингээд»
2.2.3.2.5 «Тэгэхлээр/Ингэхлээр»
2.2.3.2.6 «Тэгсэнээр/Ингэснээр»
2.2.3.2.7 «Эс тэгвэл»
2.2.3.2.8 «Тэгэхэд нь»
2.2.3.2.9 «Тийнхүү/Ийнхүү»
2.2.3.2.10 «Тийм учраас»
2.2.3.2.11 «Учир нь»
2.2.3.2.12 «Тийм болохоор»
2.2.3.2.13 «Хэдий тийм боловч»
2.2.3.2.14 «Нөгөө талаас»
2.2.3.2.15 «Яагаад гэвэл»
2.2.3.2.16 «Тэгсэн чинь» (нэмсэн)

2.3 Сул үг (х. 326)
2.3.1 Сул үгийн хүснэгт (х. 326)

2.3.2 Сул үгийн уттазүйн ангилал (х. 327)
2.3.2.1 Асуух сул үг (х. 327)
2.3.2.1.1 «бэ/ вэ»
2.3.2.1.2 «уу[2]/ юу[2]»
2.3.2.2 Үгүйсгэх сул үг (х. 328)
2.3.2.2.1 «биш»
2.3.2.2.2 «бус»
2.3.2.2.3 «(ү)гүй»
2.3.2.2.3.1 Нэр үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.2 Үйл үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.3 «алга» гэсэн үгийн тухайд
2.3.2.2.4 «үл»
2.3.2.2.5 «эс»
2.3.2.2.6 «бүү»
2.3.2.2.7 «биттгий»
2.3.2.3 Баймж сул үг (х. 335)
2.3.2.3.1 «шуу[2]»
2.3.2.3.2 «даа[4]»
2.3.2.3.3 «аа[4]»
2.3.2.3.4 «юм»
2.3.2.3.5 «мөн»
2.3.2.3.6 «билээ/ лээ»
2.3.2.3.7 «сан[4]»
2.3.2.3.8 «даг[4]»
2.3.2.3.9 «биз»
2.3.2.3.10 «бий/ вий»
2.3.2.3.11 «шив»
2.3.2.3.12 «бол» (шалтгааны)
2.3.2.3.13 «бол» (асуух)
2.3.2.3.14 Баймж сул үгийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг (х. 345)
2.3.2.4.1 Завсрын сул үг «бол»
2.3.2.4.2 Нэгттгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»
2.3.2.4.2.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн бүрэлдэхүүнд хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.2 Холбоос үгийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.3 Баймж бүтцийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.4 «... дээр» гэдэг уттыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.5 «бас» гэдэг уттыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.6 Нэгттгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүргийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4.3 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «л»
2.3.2.4.3.1 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүрэг
2.3.2.4.3.2 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»-тэй харьцуулах нь

2.4 Аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1 Сэтгэлийн хөдөлгөөн илэрхийлсэн аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.1.2 Жишээ, тайлбарууд
2.4.1.2.1 «аа»
2.4.1.2.2 «за, уухай, ай даа, аяа, өөе, тийм дээ, ашгүй дээ»
2.4.1.2.3 «эвий, иш, хөөрхий, зайлуул, хай даа, халаг, өө»
2.4.1.2.4 «хөөе, хүүе, хөөш, эй»
2.4.1.2.5 «ооё, оо–ёо–ё, хөөх, хүүш, үгүй, ер»
2.4.1.2.6 «ёо, ёх, яанаа»
2.4.1.2.7 «ха ха, хий хий, гялай, гоё, урай, ай хе, яамай»
2.4.1.2.8 «паа(х)[4], пий–пай, ишш, түй, пэй, аа–лаа–лаа, аа–яа–яа, еэ харлаа»
2.4.1.2.9 «халхай, халцгай, тий тий»
2.4.1.2.10 «чааваас, балар, ээ, яалаа гэж, үгүй шүү, юу гэж, яачихав аа»
2.4.1.2.11 «май, байз, ишш/ чишш, аа, эй дээ»
2.4.1.2.12 «ий, айжий, айжуу»
2.4.1.2.13 «бүүвэй»

2.4.2 Алгуус амьтны холбогдолтой аялга үг (х. 358)
2.4.2.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.2.2.1 Урьж дуудах аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.2 Хөөж туух аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.3 Малын зан үйлтэй холбогдолтой аялга үгс

IV ХЭСЭГ: Өгүүлбэрчлэл (х. 359–405)

1. Өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 360)

1.1 Өгүүлбэрийг хэлэх зорилгоор нь аймаглах нь (х. 360)
1.1.1 Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр
1.1.2 Асуух өгүүлбэр
1.1.3 Захирах өгүүлбэр
1.1.4 Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр

1.2 Өгүүлбэрийг бүтэц, зохион байгуулалтаар нь аймаглах нь (х. 363)
1.2.1 Нэг ба хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр (х. 363)
1.2.1.1 Нэг бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1 Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн өгүүлэхүүнд шингэх нь
1.2.1.1.1.2 Эзэн биегүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.3 Хам бүтцэнд өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
1.2.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.2 Хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.3 Өгүүлбэр үг
1.2.2 Төгс ба төгс бус өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.2.1 Төгс өгүүлбэр
1.2.2.2 Төгс бус өгүүлбэр
1.2.3 Хураангуй ба дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.3.1 Хураангуй өгүүлбэр
1.2.3.2 Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.4 Энгийн ба нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (х. 366)
1.2.4.1 Энгийн өгүүлбэр
1.2.4.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр

2. Үгсийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 367)

2.1 Үгийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1 Үгийг чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1.1 Үгийг аялгаар чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.1.2 Үгийг холбоосоор чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.2 Үгийг чөлөөтэй бус зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 368)

2.2 Үгийг захируулан холбох нь (х. 368)
2.2.1 Үгийг шууд захируулан холбох нь (х. 369)
2.2.2 Үгийг шууд бус захируулан холбох нь (х. 370)
2.2.2.1 Үгийг нөхцлөөр холбох нь
2.2.2.2 Үгийг дагавар үгээр холбох нь

3. Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 371)

3.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн (х. 371)
3.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
3.1.1.1.3 Үгсийг өгүүлэгдэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.1.1.4 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч
3.1.1.1.5 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2 Өгүүлэхүүн (х. 373)

3.1.1.2.1 Өгүүлэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.2.2 Энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.1 Нэг үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.2 Нийлмэл үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.1 Гол үйл үг ба туслах үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.2 Гол үйл үг ба баймж үйл үг/баймж бүтцээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.3 Гол үйл үг ба тодотгол үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.2 Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүд (х. 375)
3.1.2.1 Тусагдахуун (х. 375)
3.1.2.1.1 Үгсийг тусагдахууны үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.2.1.2 Шууд тусагдахуун
3.1.2.1.3 Шууд бус тусагдахуун
3.1.2.2 Тодотгол (х. 377)
3.1.2.3 Байц (х. 378)
3.1.2.3.1 Орны байц
3.1.2.3.1.1 Байр илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.2 Зүг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.3 Орон дахь хөдөлгөөнийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2 Цагийн байц
3.1.2.3.2.1 Үйл хөдлөлийн агшинг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2.2 Үйл хөдлөлийн эхлэл, төгсгөлийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.3 Дүрийн байц
3.1.2.3.4 Шалтгааны байц
3.1.2.3.5 Зорилгын байц
3.1.2.3.6 Болзолын байц
3.1.2.3.7 Дутагдах байц
3.1.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн байрлал (х. 382)

3.2 Үгсийг өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн үүргээр зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 384)
3.2.1 Тодорхойлолт
3.2.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.3 Өгүүлэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.4 Тусагдахууныг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.5 Тодотголыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.6 Байцыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь

3.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдтэй хэлзүйн холбогдолгүй үгс (х. 387)
3.3.1 Хандсан үгс
3.3.2 Оруулсан үгс
3.3.3 Аялга үгс
3.3.4 Хариулт үгс

4. Өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүн хэсгүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 389)

4.1 Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь) (х. 389)
4.1.1 Нөхцлөөр холбох нь
4.1.2 Аялгаар холбох нь
4.1.3 Холбоос үгээр холбох нь
4.2 Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (захируулан холбох нь) (х. 390)
4.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн онцлог (х. 391)
4.2.1.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүний хэлбэр ба цаг
4.2.1.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүний хэлбэр
4.2.1.2.1 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнтэй ижил байх
4.2.1.2.2 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнээс өөр байх
4.2.1.2.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь

4.2.1.2.2.3 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалах буюу заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.4 Үндсэн дүрэм
4.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 395)
4.2.2.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.2 Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.3 Тусагдахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.4 Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.5 Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр

4.3 Холимог өгүүлбэр (х. 398)

4.4 Шууд ба шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг (х. 398)
4.4.1 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.2 Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.3 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үгийг шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг болгон хувиргах нь

5. Цэг цэглэл (х. 401)

5.1 Уйгуржин монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 401)
5.1.1 Цэгүүд
5.1.2 Тэмдгүүд

5.2 Кирил монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 402)
5.2.1 Цэг
5.2.2 Асуултын тэмдэг
5.2.3 Анхаарлын тэмдэг
5.2.4 Таслал
5.2.5 Цэгтэй таслал
5.2.6 Тодорхойлох цэг
5.2.7 Хашилт
5.2.8 Цуваа цэг
5.2.9 Хаалт
5.2.10 Зураас

V ХЭСЭГ: Хавсралт (х. 406-448)

1. Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуурын жагсаалт (х.407)

2. Монгол англи хэлний үл тохирох үйл үгийн захирах байдал (х.411)

3. ОЦМХ-ний нөхцлийн жагсаалт (х. 413)

4. ОЦМХ-ний харьцааны бүтээврийн бүтэц үүргийн тогтолцоо (х.418)

5 Англи, монгол хэлний цагийн тогтолцооны дүйлгэсэн хүснэгт (х.422)

6. Номын монгол гарчиг (х. 423)

7. Хэрэглэсэн англи-герман-монгол нэр томъёоны жагсаалт (х. 438)

7. INDEX: ENGLISH-GERMAN-MONGOLIAN

We use the following abbreviations:

For Nouns:

N .....Noun
NS.....Noun Suffix
P .....Plural
PS.....Plural Suffix
C.....Case
CS .....Case Suffix
CbS .....Case-bound Suffix
CbP .....Case-bound Particle

For Verbs:

V .....Verb
VS .....Verb Suffix
Vo.....Voice
VoS .....Voice Suffix
As.....Aspect
AsS.....Aspect Suffix
DS.....Determining Suffix
NDS .....Noun Determining Suffix
VDS .....Verb Determining Suffix
cVDS....coordinating VDS
sVDS....subordinating VDS
AwDS...Adword Determining Suffix
TS.....Terminating Suffix
PTS .....Person-bound Terminating Suffix
TTS .....Tense-bound Terminating Suffix

For Adwords:

Aw .....Adword
AwS.....Adword Suffix
Nu .....Numeral
NuS.....Numeral Suffix

General:

RS .....Reflexive Suffix
→ø .....Zero-Suffix

English	German	Mongolian	Pages
A A A A	**A A A A**	**A A A A**	**A**
Ablative case	Ablativ Fall	Гарахын тийн ялгал	**90ff**, 215f, 293f
Abstract part of speech	Abstrakte Wortart	Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг	**282ff**, 71
Accusative case	Akkusativ Fall	Заахын тийн ялгал	**86ff**, 107, 393,
Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Идэвхтэй язгуур	**33ff**
Active voice	Aktive Handlungsart	Идэвхтэй хэв	**116**
Additive focus particle	Additive Fokus Partikel	Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	276, **346ff**, 372
Adjective	Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр	**212ff**
Adjective-building	Adjektivbildung	Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь	**49ff**
Admonition-PTS	Ermahnungs-PSS	Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН	**180**
Adverb	Adverb	Дайвар үг	**221ff**, 284
Adverbial clause	Adverbialsatz	Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	310-319, **397ff**
Adverbial	Adverbialbestimmung	Байц	**378ff**
Adversative voice	Adversative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлдэх хэв	**127f**
Adword	Beiwort	Тэмдэг үг	**211ff**
Adword suffix (AwS)	Beiwort-Suffix	Тэмдэг үгийн залгавар (ТҮЗ)	**218f, 223f**
Adword determining suffix (AwDS)	Beiwortbestimmendes Suffix (BbS)	Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон хэлбэх нөхцөл (ТToН)	**151ff**
Alphabet	Alphabet	Цагаан толгой	**4, 19**, 31
Analytically expressed aspect	Analytische Zustandsart	Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**136ff**
Anterior-VDS	VbS der Vorzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцүүлэх ҮToН	**159**, 209, 321
Appeal-PTS	Aufrufs-PSS	Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН	**181**
Approximate numeral	Näherungszahl	Тойм тооны үг	**246ff**
Aspect suffix (AsS)	Zustandsartsuffix (ZS)	Байдлын нөхцөл (БН)	**131ff**
Assimilation	Assimilation	Ижилсэл	**7**
Assistant part of a sentence	Neben-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүн	**375ff**
Associative-VDS	VbS der Verknüpfung	Хам ҮToН	**158**, 210
Attention part	Aufmerksamkeitswort	Хандсан үг	**387**
Attribute	Attribut	Тодотгол	**377**
Attribute clause	Attributsatz	Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр	309, **396**
Attributive Adjective	Attributives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр тодотгол болох нь	**213**
Attributive CbS	Attributives FgS	Тодотгох ТЯЗ	**104**
Auxiliary verb	Hilfsverb	Туслах үйл үг	**194ff**
B B B B	**B B B B**	**B B B B B**	
Bagarasada (code-word)	Bagarasada (Kennwort)	Багарсад (түлхүүр үг)	**13**, 17
Basic vowel	Grundvokal	Үндсэн эгшиг	**20**

Blessing-PTS	Segens-PSS	Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН	**183**, 307
Bound coordinate words	Gebundene Wortreihe	Чөлөөт бус зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**368**
Brackets (Br.)—> Parentheses (Am)			
C C C C C C C C C C C C			
Cardinal numeral	Kardinale, Grundzahl	Үндсэн тооны үг	**234ff**
Case-bound suffix (CbS)	Fallgebundenes Suffix (FgS)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ)	**101ff**
Case-bound particle (CbP)	Fallgebundene Partikel (FgP)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС)	**106ff**, 140, 372
Case suffix (CS)	Fallsuffix (FS)	Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)	**78ff**, 411f
Causal adverbial	Kausale Adverbialbestimmung	Шалтгааны байц	**381**
Causal clause	Kausalsatz	Шалтгааны гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311f**, 397
Causative voice	Kausale Zustandsart	Үйлдүүлэх хэв	**117f**
Classical Mongolian Script	Klassisch- Mongolische Schrift, Altmongolisch	Сонгодог монгол бичиг	**3f**, 401f
Clause	Teilsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэг	**389ff**, 141f
Collective CbS	Kollektives FgS	Хамт олныг заах ТЯЗ	**103**
Collective numeral	Kollektiva, Sammlungszahl	Хам тооны үг	**244ff**
Collective aspect	Kollektive Zustandsart	Олноор үйлдэх байдал	**134**
Colon	Doppelpunkt	Тодорхойлох цэг	**401, 404**
Combined sentence	Zusammengesetzter Satz	Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	**366ff**
Comitative case	Komitativ Fall	Хамтрахын тийн ялгал	**97ff**, 295
Comma	Komma	Таслал	372, **401, 403ff**
Command-PTS	Befehls-PSS	Захиран хүсэх БТөН	**177**
Communal voice	Kopulative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлцэх хэв	**126**
Comparative degree	Komparativ	Харьцуулах зэрэг	**215ff**
Complement	Ergänzung	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214, 372**, 374
Complete sentence	Vollständiger Satz	Төгс өгүүлбэр	**365**
Completed aspect	Abgeschlossene Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**133**, 137, **422**
Complex sentence	Satzgefüge	Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	141, 156, **390ff**
Component	Teil	Бүрэлдэхүүн	**363f**
Compound sentence	Satzverbindung, Satzreihe	Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	156, **389ff**
Compound predicate	Zusammengesetztes Prädikat	Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн	195, 198, **374ff**
Compound vowel	Zusammengesetzter Vokal	Нийлмэл эгшиг	**10**
Concessive adverbial	Konzessive Adverbalbestimmung	Дутагдах байц	**382**
Concessive clause	Konzessivsatz	Дутагдах гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**318**, 397
Concessive-VDS	VbS des Widerspruchs	Дутагдах ҮToH	**162**, 318
Concrete part of speech	Konkrete Wortart	Бодит үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**

Conditional adverbial	Konditionale Adverbialbestimmung	Болзох байц	**381**
Conditional clause	Konditionalsatz	Болзох гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**317f**, 397
Conditional-VDS	VbS der Bedingung	Болзох ҮToH	**161**, 317
Conjugation	Konjugation	Үйл үгийн хувилгал	**113ff**
Conjunction	Konjunktion	Холбоос үг	237, **297ff**, 367, 390
Conjunction verb	Konjunktionsverb	Холбоос үйл үг	**210**, 309f
Consonant	Konsonant	Гийгүүлэгч	**13f, 21f**
Coordinate adverbials	Adverbial-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон байц	**386**
Coordinate attributes	Attribut-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тодотгол	**386**, 214
Coordinate objects	Objekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тусагдахуун	**386**
Coordinate parts of a sentence	Satzglied-Reihe	Өгүүлбэрийн зэрэгцэн холбогдсон гишүүд	**384**
Coordinate predicates	Prädikat-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate subjects	Subjekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate words	Wortreihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**57**
Coordinating conjunction	Anreihende Konjunktion	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг	**297ff**
Coordinating VDS (cVDS)	Koordinierendes (Einfaches) VbS	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох ҮToH (ЗэҮToH)	**157ff**, 208
Copula	Kopula	Холбогч	**194, 197**, 337f
Correlate	Korrelat, Platzhalter	Орлуулагч	**363**
D D D D D D D D D D D D D			
Dash	Gedankenstrich	Урт зураас	**402, 405**
Dative-locative case	Dativ-Lokativ Fall	Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал	**83ff**, 123, 293
Dead root ---> Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Үхмэл язгуур	**35f, 407ff**
Decimal	Dezimalzahl	Аравтын бутархай	**252**
Decision-PTS	Beschlussfassungs-PSS	Даалган хүсэх БToH	**176**
Declarative sentence	Aussagesatz	Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр	**360**
Declension	Deklination	Нэр ба тэмдэг үгийн хувилгал	**23**, 72, 78, 108, 140, 218, 223, 234, 239, 245, 248, **257**, 261
Defective auxiliary verb	Defektes Hilfsverb	Дутмаг туслах үйл үг	**200**, 338ff
Definite article	Bestimmter Artikel	Тодорхой ялгац гишүүн	**88f**
Degree of adjective	Komparativ, Steigerungsform d. Adjektives	Тэмдэг нэрийн зэрэг	**215ff**
Demand-PTS	Forderungs-PSS	Сануулан хүсэх БToH	**179**
Demonstrative proword	Demonstratives Fürwort	Заах төлөөний үг	**264ff**
Derivational suffix	Wortbildungssuffix	Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)	37, **42ff**
Determining suffix (DS)	Bestimmendes Suffix (bS)	Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ToH)	**139f**, 421
Dialect synonym	Dialekt Synonym	Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс	**64**

Diminutive suffix	Diminutivsuffix (Verkleinerungssuffix)	Тэмдэг үгийн утгыг буруулах залгавар	**218**
Diminutive numeral	Diminutiva, Verkleinerungszahl	Хязгаарлах тооны үг	**250f**
Diphthong	Diphthong, Doppellaut	Хос эгшиг	**10f**, 20
Direct object	Direktes Objekt	Шууд тусагдахуун	**122, 376**
Direct speech	Direkte Rede	Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **398ff**
Direction-AwS	Richtungs-BS	Чиг заах ТҮЗ	**223f**, 294
Directive case	Direktiv Fall	Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал	**99**
Distributive numeral	Distributiva, Verteilungszahl	Түгээл тооны үг	**251ff**
Dropping vowel	Ausfallvokal	Гээгдэх эгшиг	**12, 24ff**
E E E E E E E E E E E E E			
Ellipsis	Ellipse, Auslassung	Орхилт	**363**
Epenthesized ---> Inserted			
Euphemism ---> Taboo Synonym	Euphemismus —>Tabu Synonym		
Exclamation mark	Ausrufezeichen	Анхаарлын тэмдэг	361f, **402f**
Exclamatory sentence	Ausrufesatz	Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр	**362**
Excluding-VDS	VbS der Ausschliesslichkeit	Болзох ҮҮоН	**172**
Extended combined sentence	Erweiterter zusammengesetzter Satz	Холимог өгүүлбэр	**398**
Extended sentence	Erweiterter Satz	Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр	**365**
F F F F F F F F F F F F F			
Final adverbial	Finale Adverbialbestimmung	Зорилгын байц	**381**
Final clause	Finalsatz	Зорилгын гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**312f**, 397
Final consonant	Endkonsonant	Дэвсгэрлэх гийгүүлэгч	**14**
Focus particle	Fokus Partikel	Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	**345ff**, 372
Fraction	Bruchzahl	Энгийн бутархай	**252**
Free coordinate words	Freie Wortreihe	Чөлөөт зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**367**
Full stop (Brit.) ---> Period (Am.)			
Full verb	Vollverb	Гол үйл үг	**192ff**
Functional classification of verb	Funktionsklassen des Verbes	Үйл үгийг үүргээр ангилах нь	**192ff**
Functional vowel	Funktionsvokal	Үүрэгтэй эгшиг	**23ff**
Future tense	Zukunft, Futur	Ирээдүй цаг	**147, 191, 422**
G G G G G G G G G G G G G			
Genitive case	Genitiv Fall	Харьяалахын тийн ялгал	**79ff**, 287, 392
H H H H H H H H H H H H H			
Hard sign	Härtezeichen	Хатуугийн тэмдэг	**21**, 175
Hidden "n"/"g"	Verstecktes "n"/"g"	Нууц "н"/"г"	49, 78, 235
Hierarchy list of the accusative case	Hierarchieliste des Akkus. Falls	Заахын тийн ялгалын шатлал	**89**, 393

Homonym	Homonym	Ижил үг	**62ff**
Hope-PTS	Hoffnungs-PSS	Гүнзэ хүсэх БToH	**182**
Hyphen	Bindestrich	Богино зураас	**402, 405**
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I			
Idiom	Redewendung	Өвөрмөц хэллэг	**60**
Immediately succeeding-VDS	VbS der Unmittelbarkeit	Бэлтгэх YToH	**164**, 173
Imperative	Imperativ, Befehlsform	Захирах хүсэх төлөв	**175ff**
Imperative sentence	Befehlssatz	Захирах өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Incomplete sentence	Unvollständiger Satz	Тегс бус өгүүлбэр	**365**
Indefinite present tense	Indefinite Gegenwart	Тодорхойгүй одоо цаг	**144, 161, 188, 422**
Indefinite proword	Indefinites Fürwort	Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг	**276ff**
Independent part of a sentence	Ungebundenes Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрт хамаатан холбогдолгүй үг	**387f**
Indigenous Mongolian vocabulary	Mongolisches Sondervokabular	Реал	**65**
Indirect object	Indirektes Objekt	Шууд бус тусагдахуун	**377**
Indirect speech	Indirekte Rede	Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **399**
Infinitive	Infinitiv	Тодорхойгүй төлөв	**26**
Inflectional suffix	Wortveränderungssuffix	Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)	**38, 437ff**
Inserted consonant	Verbindungskons./Einfügekonsonant	Жийрэглэх гийгүүлэгч	**105**, 437
Inserted part	Einfügewort	Оруулсан үг	**387**
Inserted vowel	Verbindungsvokal / Einfügevokal	Жийрэглэх эгшиг	**17**, 115
Instrumental case	Instrumental Fall	Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал	**93ff**, 123, 237
Intending-VDS	VbS der Absicht	Зорилгын YToH	**166**
Intensifying AwS	Verstärkungs-BS	Уттыг эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ	**219**
Intention-PTS	Absichts-PSS	Шууд хүсэх БТеН	**175**
Interjection	Interjektion	Аялга үг	**350ff**, 388
Interrogative particle	Interrogativpartikel, Fragepartikel	Асуух сул үг	**327f**, 361
Interrogative proword	Fragendes Fürwort	Асуух төлөөний үг	**268ff**, 371, 373
Interrogative sentence	Interrogativsatz, Fragesatz	Асуух өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Intonation	Betonung	Аялга	362, 389
Intransitive	Intransitiv	Эс тусах	**122**, 221
Inverted commas (Br.) ->Quotation marks (Am.)			
K K K K K K K K K K K K K K			
Kind of sentence	Satzart	Өгүүлбэрийн төрөл	**360ff**

L L L L L L L L L L L L L			
Lateral fricative	Lateral frikativ	Шүдний	**4f, 19**
Lexical Homonym	Lexikalisches Homonym	Үгсийн сангийн ижил үг	**62**
Lexicology	Lexikologie	Үгсийн сангийн судлал	**41ff**
Limiting-VDS	VbS der Begrenzung	Үгтүүлах ҮToH	**167**, 295
Listing word	Listenwort	Хураах үг	**367**
Living root ---> Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Амьд язгуур	**33f**
Loan word	Fremdwort	Зээлдсэн үг	64, **66ff**
Local adverb	Lokal Adverb	Орны дайвар үг	**228f**
Local adverbial	Lokale Adverbialbestimmung	Орны байц	193, **378f**
Local CbS	Lokales FgS	Орны ТЯЗ	**102**
Locative case ---> Dative-Locative			
Logical subject	Logisches Subjekt	Эзэн бие	**116, 123**
Logically succeeding-VDS	VbS der Logischen Folge	Дагалдах ҮToH	**165**, 173
Long vowel	Langer Vokal	Урт эгшиг	**9f, 20**
M M M M M M M M M M M M			
Main clause	Hauptsatz	Гол өгүүлбэр	307, **390**
Main part of a sentence	Haupt-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүн	**371ff**
Modal adverb	Modales Adverb	Баймж дайвар үг	**223ff**
Modal adverbial	Modale Adverbialbestimmung	Баймж байц	**380**
Modal clause	Modalsatz	Баймж гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311ff**, 397
Modal construction	Modale Konstruktion	Баймж бүтэц	**201ff**
Modal particle	Modalpartikel	Баймж сул үг	**335ff**
Modal verb	Modalverb	Баймж үйл үг	**201**
Modification	Modifikation	Тодотгол	**208, 218ff, 223ff**
Modifying verb	Modifizierendes Verb	Тодотгогч үйл үг	**208ff**
Monophonetic	Monophonetisch	Ганц дуудлагат	**5**
Mood of verb	Modus des Verbes, Verbform	Үйл үгийн төлөв	**139ff**
Morpheme	Morphem	Бүтээвэр	**71**
Morphological Homonym	Morphologisches Homonym	Үгзүйн ижил үг	**63**
Morphology	Morphologie	Үгзүй	**70ff**
Movement-AwS	Bewegungs-BS	Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ	**224**, 291
Multiplying numeral	Multiplikativa, Vervielfältig.zahl	Давтах тооны үг	**249ff**
N N N N N N N N N N N N N			
Namilang (code-word)	Namilang (Kennwort)	Намиланг (түлхүүр үг)	**13, 17**
Necessity-AwDS	Notwendigkeits-BbS	Санал болгох ТToH	**154**

Negative particle	Negationspartikeln, Verneinungspartikeln	Үгүйсгэх сул үг	**328ff**
Nominative case	Nominativ Fall	Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал	**78**, 394
Nominative complement	Gleichsetzungsnominativ	Нэр өгүүлэхүүн	**372**
Non-vocalized consonants (C9)	Nicht vokalisierte Konsonanten (K9)	Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч	**21**
Noun	Substantiv, Nomen	Нэр үг	**72ff**
Noun determining suffix (NDS)	Substantivbestimmendes Suffix (StbS)	Нэрүүдийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН)	**139ff**, **184**, 295
Noun-building	Substantivbildung	Нэр үг бүтгэх ёс	**42**
Numeral suffix (NuS)	Numeralsuffix (NS)	Тооны үгийн нөхцөл (ТҮН)	**234ff**
Numeral	Zahlwort, Numerale	Тооны үг	76, **234ff**
O O O O	**O O O O**	**O O O O**	**O**
Object	Objekt	Тусагдахуун	**375ff**
Object clause	Objektsatz	Тусагдахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**309**, **396**
Omission dots	Auslassungszeichen	Цуваа цэг	**401**, **405**
Omission of subject	Subjektausfall	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь	**371**
Ordinal numeral	Ordinale, Ordnungszahl	Дэс тооны үг	**240ff**
Original adverb	Ursprüngliches Adverb	Анхдагч дайвар үг	**221**
Original postposition	Ursprüngliche Postposition	Жинхэнэ дагавар үг	**282**
P P P P	**P P P P**	**P P P P**	
Parentheses (Am.)	Klammer	Хаалт	**402**, **405**
Part of a sentence	Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүн	**371f**, 384f, 387f
Part of speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**, 255, 282
Participle	Partizip	Үйлт нэр	**139**, **144f**
Particle	Partikel	Сул үг	**326ff**
Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Идэвхгүй язгуур	**35**, **407ff**
Passive-root adverb	Passive Wurzel-Adverb	Идэвхгүй язгуур дайвар үг болох нь	**221ff**
Passive voice	Passive Handlungsart	Идэвхгүй хэв	**124ff**
Past tense	Vergangenheit	Өнгөрсөн цаг	**143**, **184ff**
Percentage	Prozentzahl	Хувь	**253**
Perfect aspect	Perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**137**, **422**
Period (Am.)	Punkt	Цэг	360, **401**, **402**
Permission-PTS	Erlaubnis-PSS	Тушаах зөвшөөх БТөН	**181**, 310
Person-bound terminating suffix (PTS)	Personengebundenes Satzend-suffix (PSS)	Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН)	**175ff**
Personal proword	Pers. Fürwort, Pers.pronomen	Биеийн төлөөний үг	**256ff**
Phrasal verb	Phrase	Үйлийн захирах хэллэг	**411f**

Plural	Plural, Mehrzahl	Олон тоо	**72ff**, 276
Plural suffix (PS)	Pluralsuffix (PS)	Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)	**72ff**
Polyphonetic	Polyphonetisch	Олон дуудлагат	**5**
Positive degree	Positiv	Ерийн зэрэг	**215**
Possessive CbS	Possessives FgS	Хамаатуулах ТЯЗ	**101**
Possessive proword	Possessives Fürwort	Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг	**260**
Possibility-AwDS	Ermöglichungs-BbS	Чадавхи заах ТToН	**153**
Postposition	Postposition, Nachstellungswort	Дагавар үг	247, **282ff**
Predicate	Prädikat, Satzaussage	Өгүүлэхүүн	**360, 373f**, 391
Predicate clause	Prädikatsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**395**
Predicative adjective (=complement)	Prädikatives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214**
Present tense	Gegenwart	Одоо цаг	**136, 144, 145, 188ff, 422**
Progressive aspect	Progressive Zustandsart	Үргэлжлэх байдал	**136, 422**
Progressive-perfect aspect	Progressiv-perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал	**137, 422**
Progressive present tense	Progressive Gegenwart	Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг	**145, 147, 189, 422**
Progressive-VDS	VbS der Dauer	Үргэлжлэх УToН	**168**
Pronunciation rule	Ausspracheregel	Дуудлагын дүрэм	**22**
Proword	Fürwort, Pronomen	Төлөөний үг	**255ff**
Proword-conjunction	Fürwort-Konjunktion	Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үг	**319ff**
Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q			
Question mark	Fragezeichen	Асуултын тэмдэг	**402f**
Quick aspect	Schnelle Zustandsart	Хоромхон үйлдэх байдал	**131**
Quotation marks(Am.)	Anführungszeichen	Хашилт	**402, 405**
R R R R R R R R R R R R R			
Real part of speech	Echte Wortart	Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**
Reduced vowel (unstressed vowel)	Reduzierter Vokal	Балархай эгшиг	**12, 23ff**
Reflexive proword	Rückbezügliches Fürwort, Reflexivpronomen	Эгэх төлөөний үг	**261ff**
Reflexive suffix (RS)	Reflexives Suffix (RS)	Эгэх нөхцөл (ЭН)	**108ff**, 171, 173, 244, 261, 392
Reflexive word	Reflexives Wort	Эгэх үг	**263**
Relational-suffix system	Beziehungssuffix-System	Харьцааны бүтээврийн тогтолцоо	**418ff**
Repetitive aspect	Wiederholte Zustandsart	Давтан үйлдэх байдал	**135**
Representative part of speech	Stellvertretende Wortart	Төлөөний үгсийн аймаг	**255ff**
Request-PTS	Bitte-PSS	Гуйн хүсэх БToН	**178**
Response part	Antwort-Wort	Хариулт үг	**388**

Restrictive focus particle	Restriktive Fokus Partikel	Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	132, 168ff, **348ff**, 372
S S S S	**S S S S**	**S S S S S**	**S**
Seizing an opportunity-VDS	VbS der Gelegenheit	Дашрамдах ҮToH	**171**
Semantic classification	Semantische Gruppierung	Утгазүйн ангилал	228ff,234ff,256ff,350,378,384
Semi-colon	Strichpunkt, Semikolon	Цэгтэй таслал	**401, 404**
Sentence	Satz	Өгүүлбэр	**360ff**
Short vowel	Kurzer Vokal	Богино эгшиг	**10, 20**
Short sentence	Kurzer Satz	Хураангуй өгүүлбэр	**365**
Shortened form	Kurzform	Хураангуй хэлбэр	155, 185ff, 330f, 338ff
Simple sentence	Einfacher Satz	Энгийн өгүүлбэр	**366**
Simultaneous-VDS	VbS der Gleichzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцэх ҮToH	136, **157, 208**
Soft sign	Weichheitszeichen	Зөөлний тэмдэг	**22, 27ff**
Sound complex	Lautkomplex (Verlängerungssilbe)	Авианы нийлэмж	**9**
Spelling rule	Orthographieregel, Rechtschreiberegel	Зөв бичгийн дүрэм	**17, 23ff**
Strong consonant	Starker Konsonant	Хүчтэй гийгүүлэгч	**13**
Stylistic Synonym	Stilistisches Synonym	Найруулгын ойролцоо үг	**63**
Subject	Subjekt, Satzgegenstand	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**371ff**
Subject clause	Subjektsatz	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**310, 395**
Subject indicator/marker	Subjektanzeiger	Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч	**345, 372**
Subjunctive	Konjunktiv	Хүсэх төлөв	**196, 342**
Subordinate clause	Nebensatz, Gliedsatz	Гишүүн өгүүлбэр	142, 307, **391ff**
Subordinate words	Phrase	Захируулан холбогдсон үгс	**368ff**
Subordinating conjunction	unterordnende Konjunktion	Захируулан холбох холбоос үг	**307ff**
Subordinating VDS (sVDS)	Subordnierende Verbbestimmende Suffixe (Umstandanzeig. Verbbest. Suff.)	Захируулан холбох ҮToH (ЗаҮToH)	**161ff**
Succeeding-VDS	VbS der zeitl. Ablösung	Далимдах ҮToH	**170**, 173
Suffix	Suffix	Залгавар	**37ff, 413ff, 418ff**
Superlative degree	Superlativ	Давуу зэрэг	**217ff**
Syllable	Silbe	Үе	**15, 22**
Synonym	Synonym	Ойролцоо үг	**63ff**
Syntagma	Syntagma	Нийлц	**108, 418ff**
Syntax	Syntax, Satzlehre	Өгүүлбэрзүй	**359ff**
Syntactic subject	Syntax-Subjekt	Өгүүлбэрзүйн өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**116, 123**
Synthetically expressed aspect	Synthetische Zustandsart	Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**131ff**
T T T T	**T T T T**	**T T T T T**	
Taboo synonym (Euphemism)	Tabu Synonym	Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үг	**65**

Temporal adverb	Temporal Adverb	Цагийн дайвар үг	229ff
Temporal adverbial	Temporale Adverbialbestimmung	Цагийн байц	379
Temporal clause	Temporalsatz	Цагийн байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	313-117, 397
Temporary aspect	Provisorische Zustandsart	Түр үйлдэх байдал	132
Tense-bound terminating suffix (TTS)	Zeitgebundenes Satzendsuffix (ZSS)	Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН)	184ff, 418ff
Tense	Tempus, Zeitform	Цаг	184ff, 391, 418ff
Terminating suffix (TS)	Satzendsuffix (SS)	Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН)	175ff
Transcription	Umschrift	Авианы галиг	4ff
Transformation	Umwandlung	Хувиргал	122ff, 400
Transitive	Transitiv	Тусах	122ff, 221
Type of sentence	Satzform	Өгүүлбэрийн хэв шинж	363ff
V V V V	**V V V V**	**V V V V V**	
Verb	Verb	Үйл үг	113ff
Verb determining suffix (VDS)	Verbbestimmendes Suffix (VbS)	Үйлийг тодорхойлох холбох нөхцөл (ҮТоН)	156ff, 418ff
Verb-building	Verbbildung	Үйл үг бүтэх ёс	54f
Vocalized consonants (C7)	Vokalisierte Konsonanten (K7)	Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч	21ff
Voice suffix (VoS)	Handlungsartsuffix (HS)	Хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН)	115ff
Vowel	Vokal	Эгшиг	7ff, 20ff
Vowel harmony	Vokalharmonie	Эгшгийн зохицол	7, 20
Vowel weakness	Vokalschwäche	Эгшгийн сулрал	12, 23ff
W W W W	**W W W W**	**W W W W W**	
Weak consonant	Schwacher Konsonant	Сул гийгүүлэгч	13
Will-PTS	Willens-PSS (Vokativ)	Шууд хүсэх БТөН	175
Wish-AwDS	Wunsch-BbS	Хүсэх ТТоН	151
Word-building	Wortbildung	Үг бүтэх	41ff
Word class —> Part of Speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	72ff
Word combination	Wortzusammensetzung	Нийлэмж үг	57ff
Word root	Wortwurzel	Үгийн язгуур	33ff
Word stem	Wortstamm	Үгийн үндэс	36
Word structure	Wortstruktur	Үгийн бүтэц	33ff
Word-sentence	Ein-Wort-Satz	Өгүүлбэр үг	364
Z Z Z Z	**Z Z Z Z**	**Z Z Z Z Z**	
Zero-suffix (–ø)	Nullsuffix (–ø)	Тэг нөхцөл (–ø)	87,116,131,177,369,418ff,437ff

Price: 25$+5$

A complete grammar

of the Mongolian language,
written with a new, indigenous approach,
featuring

Cyrillic Script
Classical Mongolian Script
English Explanations

Very Detailed Table of Contents, Both in English and Mongolian
Necessary Linguistic Terms Explained Throughout the Book
Literal Translation for Analytical Understanding
Extensive Appendix (Suffix List, Index, etc.)
Many Examples Sentences of Everyday Life
Helpful Comparison and Overview Tables
Insights in Mongolian Cultural Heritage
Hints for Using Colloquial Language
Necessary Rules

This Grammar is relevant and recommended for both learners and researchers of the Mongolian language.

First publishing in Hong Kong, 1996.
Second publishing in Hong Kong, 2001.
Third publishing in Ulaanbaatar, 2005.

Printed in Mongolia

ISBN 99929-0-445-3